

The Magic Land of Oz...

We first get into it when we read
"The Wizard of the Emerald
City" by A. Volkov.

For this famous fairy tale
is the first book in L.F. Baum's
series retold in Russian.

In this book the young reader
will meet Dorothy and her friends
again, as well as make acquaintance
with new amusing characters.



Beginner

Elementary

Для начинающих

Pre-Intermediate

Для продолжающих
первого уровня

Intermediate

Для продолжающих
второго уровня

Upper Intermediate

Для продолжающих
третьего уровня

Advanced

Для совершенствующихся

ISBN 978-5-8112-2970-3



9 785811 229703

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Л. Фрэнк Баум ЧУДЕСА СТРАНЫ ОЗ • L. Frank Baum THE MAGIC OF OZ

АЙРИС ПРЕСС

Домашнее чтение

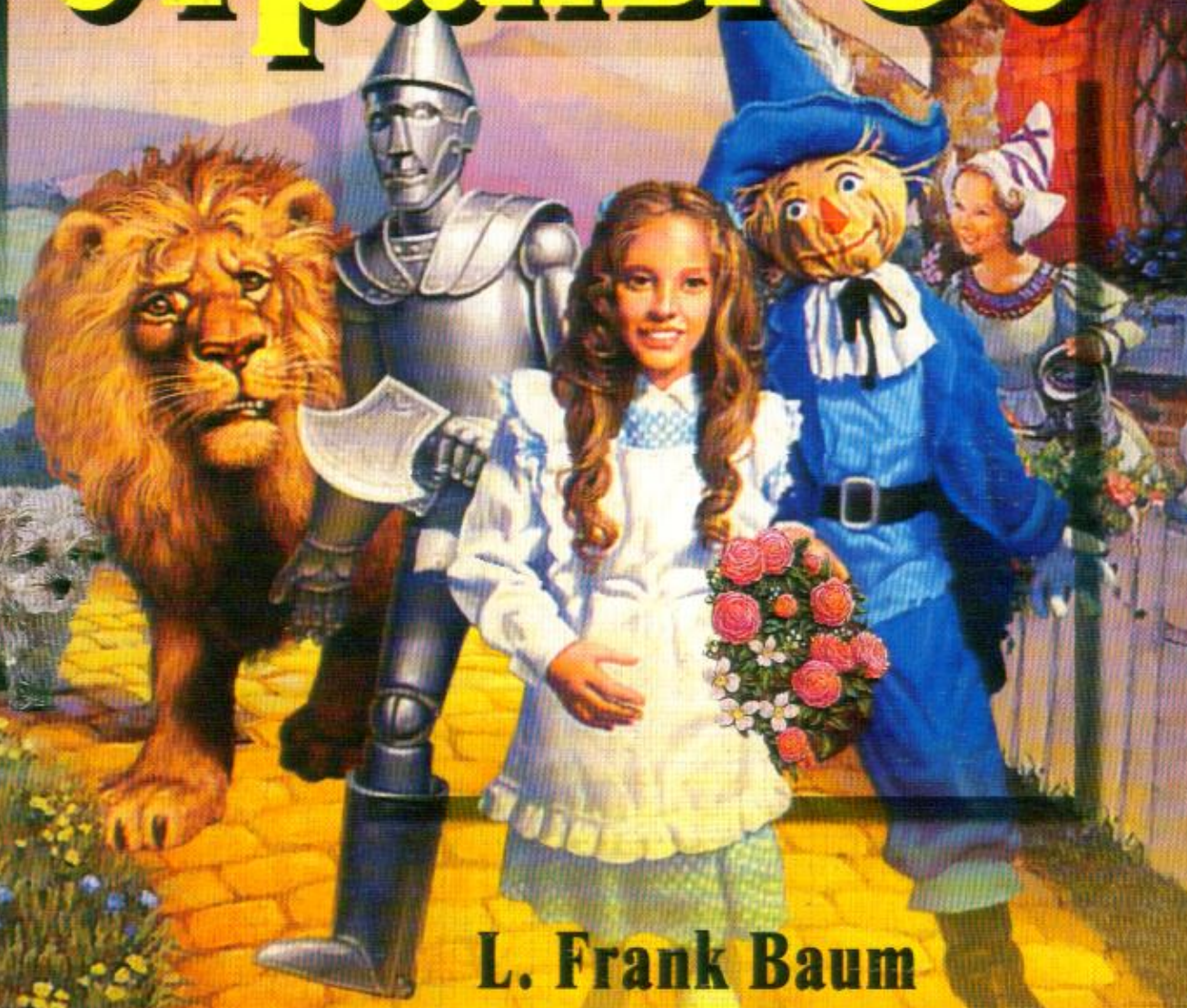


АНГЛИЙСКИЙ клуб

Elementary

Л. Фрэнк Баум

Чудеса Страны Оз



L. Frank Baum

The Magic of Oz

Elementary



АНГЛИЙСКИЙ клуб

Домашнее чтение

Л. Фрэнк Баум

**ЧУДЕСА
СТРАНЫ ОЗ**

*Адаптация текста, словарь
Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой
Упражнения И. П. Твердохлебовой*

МОСКВА



АЙРИС ПРЕСС

2008

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93
Б29

Серия «Английский клуб» включает книги и учебные пособия, рассчитанные на пять этапов изучения английского языка: Elementary (для начинающих), Pre-Intermediate (для продолжающих первого уровня), Intermediate (для продолжающих второго уровня), Upper Intermediate (для продолжающих третьего уровня) и Advanced (для совершенствующихся).

Серийное оформление *А. М. Драгового*

Баум, Л. Ф.

Б29 Чудеса страны Оз [= The Magic of Oz] / Л. Фрэнк Баум; адаптация текста, слов. Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой; упражнения И. П. Твердохлебовой. — М.: Айрис-пресс, 2008. — 240 с. — (Английский клуб). — (Домашнее чтение).

ISBN 978-5-8112-2970-3

Книга представляет собой две адаптированные и сокращенные части знаменитого сказочного цикла Л. Фрэнка Баума о Волшебной стране Оз. Тексты сказок сопровождаются занимательными упражнениями. Книга содержит постраничный комментарий и словарь и предназначена для начинающих самостоятельно изучать английский язык.

УДК 811.111(075)
ББК 81.2Англ-93

ISBN 978-5-8112-2970-3

© ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс», 2002

Part One





Chapter One THE CYCLONE

Little Dorothy¹ lived on the great Kansas prairie². She lived with Uncle Henry and Aunt Em. Uncle Henry was a farmer. Aunt Em was his wife. Their house was very small. It had only one room. There were not many things in it. There was a table, a cupboard, three or four chairs and the beds.

Near the house there were neither trees nor flowers. On the right and on the left there was only the great grey Kansas prairie. Even the grass was not green but grey.

¹ Dorothy ['dɔrəθi] — Дороти

² Kansas prairie ['kænzəs 'preəri] — Канзасская прерия (Канзас — штат в центральной части США)

Uncle Henry and Aunt Em worked all day. They never laughed. They had no time to laugh. They began to work early in the morning and stopped late in the evening. But little Dorothy often laughed. She laughed because she was happy. She was happy because she had a dear friend. It was Toto,¹ a little black dog. Toto had long hair, small black eyes and a funny little nose. Toto and Dorothy ran and played all day long.²

One afternoon Uncle Henry was at the door of his house. He looked at the sky. The sky was not blue, it was grey. Dorothy was in the yard with Toto in her arms. She looked at the sky too. Dorothy did not like that grey sky.

Suddenly a storm came from the East. The sky was very dark now. Uncle Henry cried out to Aunt Em who was in the house:

“A cyclone, Em, a cyclone is coming! How terrible!” He ran off to look after the cows and the horses. Aunt Em came to the door and looked at the sky too. She was frightened.³

“Yes, a cyclone is coming,” she cried to Dorothy. “Quick, Dorothy, run into the house and stay there. I must help Uncle Henry!”

And Aunt Em quickly ran off.

Dorothy ran into the house with Toto in her arms. At that moment a strange and terrible thing happened. The cyclone lifted the little house into the air. Then it carried the house very, very far away. Little Dorothy did not know what to do. It was very dark in the house and she was frightened. She wanted to cry.

“What will happen to us?”⁴ little Dorothy thought.

Minute after minute passed. Hour after hour passed.

“I must wait and see what will happen,” the girl thought. “Now I shall go to bed and sleep.”⁵

She got up, found her bed and lay down on it. Toto came up and lay down beside the bed.

¹ Toto ['toutou] — Тото

² all day long — весь день

³ was frightened ['fraɪtənd] — была испугана

⁴ What will happen to us? — Что с нами будет?

⁵ Now I shall go to bed and sleep. — Сейчас я должна лечь спать.

Chapter Two

DOROTHY MEETS A GOOD WITCH

Dorothy slept for a long time. When she woke up she sat up in her bed and looked around. It was early morning. It was very light in the room now. She got up and with Toto in her arms ran to the door and opened it.

The little girl cried out with joy.¹ She saw a lot² of beautiful fruit-trees and wonderful bright flowers. Beautiful birds sat in the trees and sang their songs. A little way off³ there was a little river.

"I am in a fairy-land," thought Dorothy. She looked at the bright flowers and beautiful trees and laughed with joy.

Suddenly Dorothy saw some people a little way off. There were three men and one woman coming to the house.

"What funny people," thought Dorothy. "They are so small, but they look old, — not like children."

The woman was very old. Her face was yellow. Her hair was white. She could not walk fast.

The funny people came up to the house and stopped. For some time neither Dorothy nor the people spoke. Dorothy looked at them, they looked at Dorothy.

"I think they are afraid of me," she thought. "Why?"

The little old woman came up to Dorothy and said. "You are welcome, beautiful Fairy, to the Land of Oz, to the Country of the Munchkins.⁴ We thank you very, very much!"

"Why do you call me a fairy? Why do you thank me?" asked Dorothy.

"We thank you because you have killed⁵ the Wicked Witch of the East,"⁶ answered the old woman. "Our people were her slaves. Now they are free."

"I don't understand her," thought Dorothy. "Why does she

say I killed the Witch of the East? I didn't kill her. How could I kill her? I am only a little girl. What can I say to this old woman?"

And she said: "You are very kind. But I think there is a mistake. I am not a fairy, and I didn't kill the Witch of the East!"

"That's right," answered the little old woman. "You didn't kill her. Your house did it."

"How?" asked Dorothy.

"Look," said the little woman, "you can see the Witch's feet under your house!"

Dorothy looked and saw two feet in silver shoes. The body was under the house.

She was frightened. "What shall I do?" she cried out. "What shall I do? Now I understand what happened. The house fell on this poor woman and killed her. I am so sorry, so sorry for her!¹ What shall we do now?"

"You must not be sorry for *her*!" said the little woman.

"But who was she?" asked Dorothy.

"She was the Wicked Witch of the East," answered the woman. "She made all the Munchkin people her slaves. They worked for her day and night. Now they are free, because your house has fallen on her and killed her."

"Who are you?" asked Dorothy. "And where am I?"

"I am the Witch of the North," said the little woman. "But I am a good witch and a friend of the Munchkin people. You are in the Munchkin Country in the Land of Oz."

"So you are a witch too..." said Dorothy.

"Yes, I am," answered the little woman. "But I am a good witch, I tell you."

"Are there any good witches?" asked Dorothy.

"Yes, there are," answered the little woman. "There were four witches in the Land of Oz. Two of them are good witches, the Witch of the South and the Witch of the North. I am the Witch of the North. Then there were two wicked witches. They lived in the East and in the West. And now there is only one wicked witch in the Land of Oz. She lives in the West. Your house killed the Witch of the East and we are glad of that."²

¹ cried out with joy — вскрикнула от радости

² a lot — очень много

³ a little way off — недалеке

⁴ You are welcome, beautiful Fairy [ˈfɛəri], to the Land of Oz, to the Country of the Munchkins [ˈmʌntʃkɪnz]. — Добро пожаловать, прекрасная фея, на землю Оз, в страну Жевунов (прозвище жителей, от глагола to munch — жевать).

⁵ you have killed — Вы убили

⁶ the Wicked [ˈwɪkɪd] Witch of the East — Злая Колдунья Восточной страны

¹ I am so sorry... for her! — Мне так жаль... ее!

² we are glad of that — мы этому рады



Chapter Three DOROTHY WANTS TO GO BACK HOME

“If you are a good witch,” cried Dorothy, “please help me to go back to my aunt and uncle. I think they are terribly frightened, they don’t know where I am. Please help me to go back to Kansas prairie.”

The little men and the old woman looked at Dorothy and did not speak for some time.

“We don’t know where Kansas is,” said one of them. “We cannot help you to go back to your prairie.”

“That’s true, my dear,” said the good witch. “We don’t know where your prairie is and we can’t help you. You must stay with us.”

At these words¹ Dorothy began to cry. She could not be happy

in that beautiful country when her aunt and uncle were so far away. She loved them very much. The little people looked at her and began to cry too. Then the little old woman said:

“What is your name, dear child?”

“My name is Dorothy,” said the girl.

“Listen to me, Dorothy,” said the little woman. “Only Oz, the great Wizard of the Land of Oz,¹ can help you. You must find him and ask him to help you. He lives in the Emerald City.”

“Where is that city?” asked Dorothy.

“It’s in the middle of the Land of Oz. And the Wizard is the ruler of the Emerald City,” said the little old woman.

“Is he a good man?” asked Dorothy.

“I don’t know,” said the little old woman. “I only know that he is a good Wizard.”

“How can I get to the Emerald City?” asked Dorothy. “Can you tell me the way there?”

“You must walk all the way there,” said the old woman. “It is a long way. And it is full of dangers.”²

“I am afraid,” said the little girl. “Can you go with me?³ You are my friends, aren’t you?”

“Yes, we are your friends,” said the Good Witch, “but we cannot go with you. I am sorry to say. But take these shoes, my dear!” The little woman took off the silver shoes of the Wicked Witch of the East and gave them to Dorothy. “There is some magic in these shoes. I don’t know what magic, but I hope it will help you.”

Dorothy took the shoes of the Wicked Witch of the East and put them on.

“Now I must leave you,” said the kind little woman. “I hope you will find the Emerald City and the Wizard of the Land of Oz. The road to the Emerald City is made of yellow brick.⁴ You must walk along that

¹ only Oz, the Great Wizard of the Land of Oz — только Оз, Великий Волшебник страны Оз

² It is a long way. And it is full of dangers. — Путь туда далек. И он полон опасностей.

³ Can you go with me? — зд. Не пойдете ли Вы со мной?

⁴ The road... is made of yellow brick. — Дорога... вымощена желтым кирпичом.

¹ at these words — при этих словах.

road. And don't be afraid of the Wizard. Tell him your story and he will help you to go back to your aunt and uncle. Good-bye, my dear!"

The Witch turned around on her left foot three times¹ and disappeared. The three old Munchkins said good-bye to Dorothy and walked away.

Chapter Four DOROTHY MEETS THE SCARECROW

Dorothy put on the silver shoes of the Wicked Witch of the East and called Toto. "Come along, Toto," she said, "we shall go to the Emerald City and ask the Great Wizard to send us back to Kansas."

She went into the little house, took some bread from the cupboard and put it in the little basket.

So Dorothy and Toto began to walk along the yellow brick road. The day was fine. The sky was blue. The birds sang in the trees. Dorothy was happy because she hoped to see her aunt and uncle very soon.

Evening came. Dorothy was tired from her long walk. She decided to have a rest. So she sat down on the green grass by the road. Not far away in the middle of the field she saw a scarecrow.

The Scarecrow looked very funny. There was straw in its body and straw in its head. Its face was a piece of an old shirt. The nose, the mouth and eyes were painted² on the shirt. It had a hat on its head and a pair of old shoes on its feet.

Dorothy went up to the Scarecrow and stopped.

"Good day," said the Scarecrow in a very friendly way.³

"Oh, can you speak?" asked the little girl in surprise.

"Yes," was the answer, "I can! How do you do?"

"How do you do," Dorothy answered. "I hope you are well?"⁴

¹ turned around on her left foot three times — повернулась на левой ноге три раза

² were painted — были нарисованы (краской)

³ in a very friendly way — вполне по-дружески

⁴ I hope you are well? — Надеюсь, Вы себя хорошо чувствуете?

"No," answered the Scarecrow, "I am not very well. I don't like to stay here day and night. But I must keep the birds away."¹

"Can't you get down?" asked Dorothy.

"I think I can with your help," said the Scarecrow. "Please give me your hand!"

Dorothy gave him her hand and helped the Scarecrow to get down.

"Thank you very much," said the Scarecrow. "I am a new man now. Who are you, little girl? And where are you going?"

"My name is Dorothy," said the little girl. "I am going to the Emerald City. I want to ask the Great Wizard to send me back to Kansas prairie."

"Where is the Emerald City?" asked the Scarecrow, "and who is the Great Wizard?"

"Why! Don't you know the Great Wizard?"² Dorothy asked him in surprise. "All the people in the country know him."

"And I don't!" cried the Scarecrow. "You see, the farmers who made me with straw made a mistake. They didn't put brains into my head. I have no brains and people always call me a fool."

"Oh," said Dorothy, "I am very sorry for you!"

"I want to go with you to the Emerald City," said the Scarecrow, "I shall ask the Wizard to give me some brains. Do you think he can do it?"

"I don't know," said Dorothy. "But you may come with me if you like."

"Yes, I shall come with you," said the Scarecrow. "You see, I don't like it when people call me a fool because I have no brains. I have only straw in my head."

"I understand you very well," said the little girl. She was very sorry for the Scarecrow. "Come with me. We shall ask the Great Wizard to give you some brains."

"Thank you," said the Scarecrow, "thank you very much!"

And they walked back to the yellow brick road.

When Toto saw their new comrade, he did not like him. And he showed it. He began to bark.

"Don't be afraid of Toto," said Dorothy. "He never bites."

¹ I must keep the birds away — я должен отпугивать птиц

² Why! Don't you know the Great Wizard? — Как! Разве ты не знаешь Великого Волшебника?

"Oh, I am not afraid of him," said the Scarecrow. "He can't bite the straw. I am afraid of only one thing."

"What are you afraid of?" asked the little girl. "The farmer who made you?"

"No, I am afraid only of a lighted match,¹" answered the Scarecrow.

Chapter Five DOROTHY MEETS THE WOODMAN AND THE LION

They started for the Emerald City. On their way there they met a strange man. His body, his arms and legs were made of tin. His head was made of tin too. In his right hand he had an axe. He was a woodman.

"Where are you going?" the funny man asked them.

"We are going to the Emerald City," answered Dorothy.

"Why are you going there?" asked the Woodman.

"We are going to the Emerald City because we want to see the Great Wizard of Oz," answered the little girl.

"Why do you want to see the Great Wizard?" asked the Tin Woodman.

"I want to ask him to send me back to Kansas prairie," answered Dorothy. "The Scarecrow will ask him to put some brains into his head. You see, only the Great Wizard can do these things."

"May I go with you?" asked the Tin Woodman. "I want to ask the Great Wizard to put a heart into my body. There is no heart in my body. And I can't be happy if I have no heart."

"You may come with us if you like," said the little girl.

Soon Dorothy and her two comrades came to a thick forest. Suddenly they heard a terrible roar. Then they saw a great lion who jumped on the road. With one blow of his paw he sent the Scarecrow to the ground.²¹ Then he turned to the Tin Woodman and gave him

a blow with his paw. The Tin Woodman fell to the ground and lay there. Toto began to bark and the Lion gave him a blow too.

Dorothy was a very brave girl. She ran up to the Lion and gave him a blow on the nose.

"Don't bite my Toto! How can you? You are so big, and he is so small. You are a big coward! Only cowards can be bad to those who are small.¹"

"Yes, I am a coward," said the Lion. "I know it very well. I am not brave. But what can I do?"

"And why are you a coward?" asked Dorothy.

"I don't know why," answered the Lion. "All the other beasts in the forest think I am very brave. People call the Lion the King of the Beasts. I know that people are afraid of me when I roar. That's why² I always roar when I meet people or animals. They all run away from me. They don't know that I am afraid of *them*. And I don't want them to know."

"Do you want to come with us to the Emerald City and see the Great Wizard of Oz?" Dorothy asked him. "I think the Great Wizard can give you courage and make you brave."

"Oh, yes," answered the Lion. "I shall be very glad to go with you to the Emerald City."

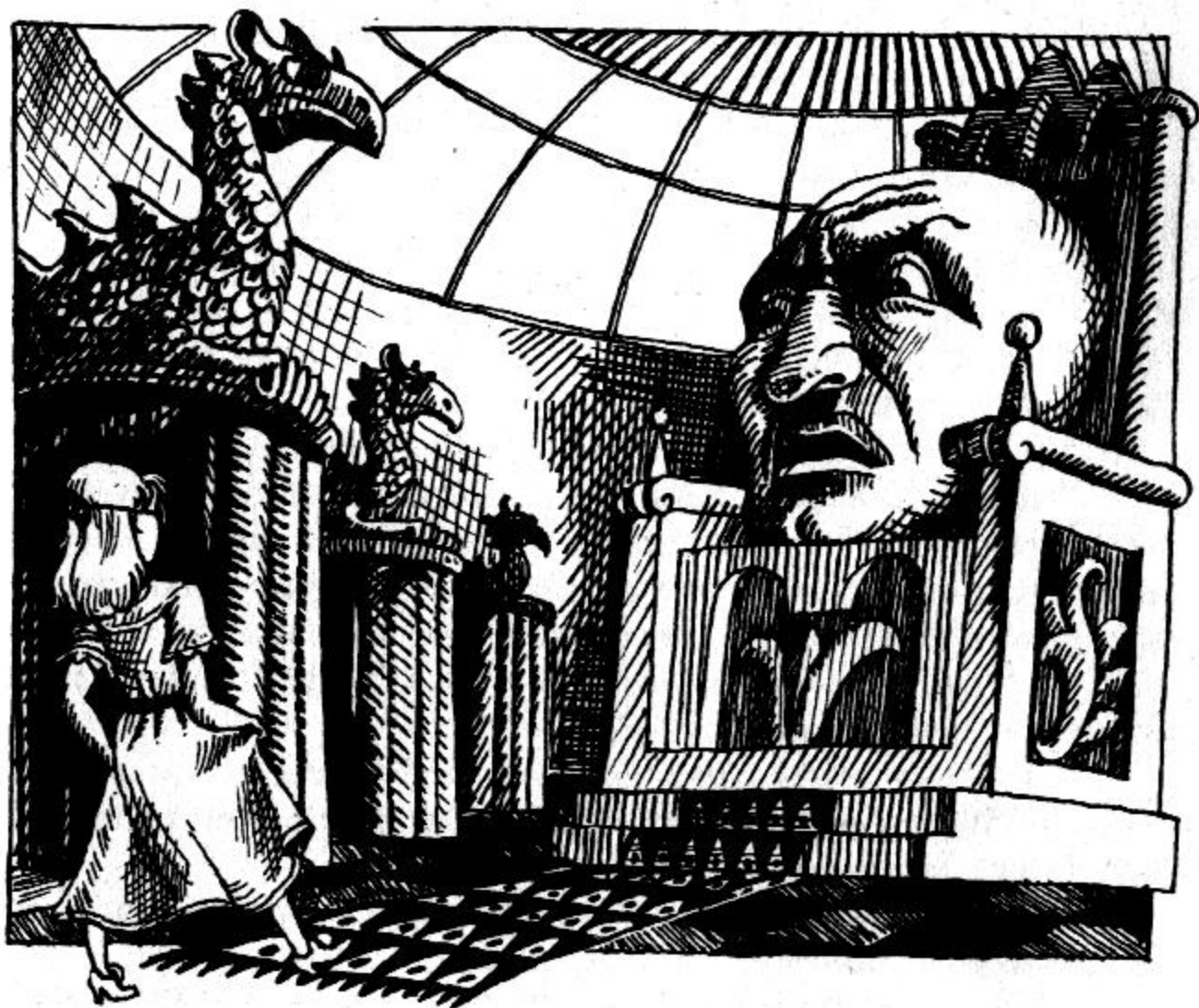
So the four comrades started for the Emerald City along the road of yellow brick.

¹ a lighted match [ˈlaɪtɪd ˈmætʃ] — зажженная спичка

² With one blow [blou] of his paw [pɔ:] he sent the Scarecrow to the ground. — Одним ударом лапы он опрокинул на землю Страшила.

¹ can be bad to those who are small — могут обижать тех, кто меньше их

² that's why — вот почему



Chapter Six DOROTHY TALKS ABOUT OZ, THE WIZARD

After a long walk Dorothy and her friends came to a great green wall. The wall went around the Emerald City. It was high and thick and had only one gate in it. The road of yellow brick ended at the gate.

Dorothy knocked at the gate. It opened slowly and they saw a little man in a green suit. His face was green; his beard and hair were green too. Near him there was a large green box.

When the little man in the green suit saw Dorothy and her comrades he asked:

“Who are you? What do you want in the Emerald City?”

“We want to see the Great Wizard of Oz,” said Dorothy.

“Do you think the Great Wizard will see you?”¹ asked the little green man.

“Why not?” asked Dorothy. “Why can’t he see us?”

“He sees no men, women or children,” answered the little green man.

“Does he never go out for a walk?” asked the Scarecrow.

“Never!” was the answer. “He sits day after day in the great Throne Room and never goes out.”

“What is he like?” asked the girl.

“I can’t tell you that, I have never seen him,” said the green man. “You see, the Great Wizard can change his form when he likes. And he changes it all the time. Some people say he looks like a bird or a cat. Other people say he looks like a monkey. And some say he looks like a beautiful fairy. But we don’t know what his right form is!”²

“That is very strange, isn’t it?” said Dorothy. “But we must see him.”

“Why must you see him?” asked the little man.

“I must see him because I want him to give me some brains,” said the Scarecrow.

“Oh, it’s very easy for him to give you some brains,” said the little man. “The Great Wizard has a lot of brains.”

“And I want him to give me a heart,” said the Tin Woodman.

“That will be easy for him too,” said the little man. “He has a large collection of hearts, big and small. He keeps them in a silver box.”

“And I shall ask him to give me some courage,” said the Cowardly Lion.

“Oh, the Wizard has a big bag of courage in his Throne Room,” said the little green man. “He will be glad to give you some courage from the bag.”

“And I shall ask him to send me back to Kansas prairie,” said Dorothy. “It is my home. My aunt and uncle are waiting for me there.”

“I don’t know where Kansas prairie is,” said the little man. “But I hope the Great Wizard will find Kansas for you. Now I shall take you to him, if you are not afraid. The Wizard of Oz is very

¹ will see you — эд. примет вас

² what his right form is — какова его наружность на самом деле

terrible. But first I shall give you all eye-glasses. You must put them on and wear them all the time."

"Why?" asked Dorothy.

"Because," said the green man, "the Great Wizard has ordered it. All the houses in the Emerald City are made of emeralds. To look at them will be bad for your eyes. All the people who live in the Emerald City and those who come to it must wear eye-glasses night and day. They can't take them off because when they put the eye-glasses on I lock them. The Great Wizard ordered it and you must do what he wants you to do."

He opened his big box. Dorothy saw a lot of green eye-glasses in it.

The man found a pair of glasses for Dorothy and put them over her eyes. Then he locked them at the back of her head with a little key. Then the green man found a pair of glasses for the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman. He even found green glasses for Toto and the Lion.

He locked all of them with his key and said:

"Now let us go to the Great Wizard of Oz!"

And they went after the little green man into the streets of the Emerald City.

Little Dorothy and her friends gave a cry of surprise — so bright and beautiful was the Emerald City. They liked it very much. The houses were made of green emeralds. The window glass was green too. Even the sky over their heads was a little green. There were many people: men, women and children, walking in the streets of the Emerald City. They all wore green clothes. They had beautiful green eyes and green hair. They looked at Dorothy and her friends in surprise, but they did not speak to them. The children were frightened when they saw the Cowardly Lion. They all ran to their mothers. There were no horses, dogs or other animals in the Emerald City. The people looked at Toto in surprise.

There were many shops in the Emerald City. Dorothy saw green sweets and cakes, green shoes and hats, and green clothes in the shops. At one place a man sold green nuts and children gave him green money.

Soon they saw a big and wonderful palace. It stood in the middle of the Emerald City. The walls of the palace were made of green emeralds.

The ruler of the Emerald City, the Great Wizard of Oz lived in that beautiful green palace.

Chapter Seven THE GREAT WIZARD OF OZ

There was a soldier at the door of the palace, who had a long green beard. His face was green too. And so was his hair.¹ The little man said to the soldier: "These people want to see the Great Wizard."

"Come in," said the Green Soldier. "Wait a little and I shall go to the door of the Throne Room and tell the Wizard that you are waiting for him."

Dorothy and her friends waited for a long time. At last the Green Soldier came back.

"Have you seen the Wizard?" asked Dorothy.

"No, I haven't," said the Green Soldier. "I have never seen him. But I spoke to him through the screen which was between us. The Wizard was behind it. He says that he will see you and do what he can for you. Each of you must come into his room alone. Each day Oz will see only one of you. So you will stay at the Palace for some days. I shall take you to your rooms now. You can rest there."

"Thank you," said Dorothy. "Thank you very much. That is very kind of the Great Wizard."

Suddenly a bell rang and a green girl came up to Dorothy.

She said: "That is the signal. You must go into the Throne Room alone."

She opened the door and Dorothy walked into a big round room. Dorothy saw a throne in the room. It was made of green emeralds. In the middle of the throne there was a very, very Big Head. There were no arms, or legs, or body. Only a Head! There was no hair on the Head. But it had eyes, a nose and a mouth.

Dorothy was frightened. The eyes of the Head turned slowly and looked at her. Then the mouth opened and said:

"I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you, little girl? And what do you want of me?"

Dorothy took courage² and answered:

"I am Dorothy, and I want your help. I want you to send me

¹ And so was his hair. — И такие же (зеленые) были у него волосы.

² Dorothy took courage — Дороти набралась храбрости

home¹ to my Aunt Em and my Uncle Henry. Your country is beautiful, but I want to go home."

The eyes of the Head looked at her for a minute. Then the Head said:

"Where did you get those silver shoes?"

"I got them from the Wicked Witch of the East," said Dorothy. "My house fell on her and killed her. So I took her silver shoes."

Then the Head said again:

"What do you want of me?"

"I want you to send me back to Kansas to my Aunt Em and my Uncle Henry," said Dorothy again. "Your country is very beautiful, but I don't like it. And I know that Aunt Em is unhappy because she doesn't know where I am."

The eyes of the Head opened and closed three times. Then they looked up and down. And after that they looked at Dorothy again. The Wizard said:

"Why do you ask *me* to do it for you?"

"Because you are strong and I am not," said Dorothy. "Because you are the Great Wizard and I am only a poor little girl."

"But you are strong too," said the Wizard. "You killed the Wicked Witch of the East."

"I didn't want to kill her," said Dorothy, "and I didn't kill her. My house did it, it fell on her."

"Well," said the Head. "You ask me to help you. You want me to send you back home. And what will *you* do for me? You must help me first. Help me and then I shall help you."

"But what can I do?" asked Dorothy. "How can I help you?"

"Kill the Wicked Witch of the West," said the Wizard.

"But I cannot do it," poor Dorothy cried out.

"You killed the Wicked Witch of the East and you wear her silver shoes. So you can kill the Wicked Witch of the West too. Kill her and I shall send you back to your aunt and uncle."

The little girl was terribly frightened.

"How can I kill the Wicked Witch of the West? If you, the Great and Terrible Wizard, can't kill her, how can I do it?"

"I don't know how. But that is my answer. Kill her, then come and tell that you have killed her. Now go! And remember — she is very, very wicked. She is terrible!"

Poor Dorothy went back to the room where her friends were.

"There is no hope for me," said Dorothy. And she repeated the words of the Wizard. Then she went to her room and cried there.

Her friends were very sorry for her, but they did not know how they could help her.

Chapter Eight

THE SCARECROW AND THE TIN WOODMAN TALK TO THE WIZARD

The next morning the Green Soldier took the Scarecrow to the Wizard.

When the Scarecrow came into the Great Throne Room, he saw a Beautiful Girl on the emerald throne. Her dress was green and her long hair was green too.

The Beautiful Girl looked at the Scarecrow and said: "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you, and what do you want of me?"

"I am only a Scarecrow. My body is made of straw. My head is made of straw too, so I have no brains. Please put some brains into my head, — because I don't want to be a fool."

"Why must I do this for you?" asked the Beautiful Girl.

"Because you have a lot of brains," said the Scarecrow. "Only you can help me."

"All right," said the Girl, "I shall help you. But you must help *me* first."

"How can I help you?" asked the Scarecrow.

"Kill the Wicked Witch of the West; then I shall give you a lot of brains," said Oz.

"But you asked Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch of the West," said the Scarecrow.

"That's right, I did," said Oz. "it's all the same to me¹ who

¹ I want you to send me home — я хочу, чтобы Вы отослали меня домой

¹ it's all the same to me — Мне все равно

kills her. Come and tell me that you have killed her and I shall do what you want me to do.”

The Scarecrow went back to his friends.

“Did you see the Big Head?” asked Dorothy.

“It was a Beautiful Girl, not a Head,” said the Scarecrow. And he repeated the words of Oz. His friends were very sorry for him.

The next morning the Green Soldier came for the Woodman.

When the Tin Woodman came into the Great Throne Room he saw a Terrible Beast there. The Beast was very big. It had five long arms and five long legs. There were five eyes in its face. But the Tin Woodman was not afraid of the Beast, he had no heart.

“I am Oz, the Great and Terrible,” said the Beast in a loud voice. “Who are you, and what do you want of me?”

“I am a Woodman and I have no heart because I am made of tin. Please give me a heart. I want to be a real man.”

“Why do you ask me for a heart?” said the Beast.

“Because only you can do it! Please help me,” said the Woodman.

“I can give you a heart, but you must help me first,” said Oz.

“What must I do?” asked the Woodman.

“Help Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch of the West,” answered the Beast. “Then come to me. And I shall give you a big heart.”

So the Tin Woodman went back to his friends and repeated the words of the Terrible Beast. And they were very sorry for the poor Woodman.

The Cowardly Lion said:

“Tomorrow I shall go to see the Wizard. If he is in the form of a Beast,¹ I shall roar and frighten him. If he is in the form of a Beautiful Girl I shall jump at her and frighten her. If he is in the form of a Head I shall push it down from the throne. All will be well, my friends.”



Chapter Nine “WHAT SHALL WE DO NOW?”

The Cowardly Lion walked into the Throne Room and looked around. He saw a Ball of Fire in front of the throne. The fire was very bright. It was so bright, that the Lion could not look at it. He could not go near it.

Then a voice came from the Ball of Fire. These were the words:

“I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you and what do you want of me?”

And the Lion answered:

“I am a Cowardly Lion. I am afraid of people and beasts. I ask you to give me some courage. People call me the King of Beasts, so I must be brave.”

“Why do you ask *me* for it?” asked Oz.

¹ if he is in the form of a Beast — если он примет облик Зверя

"Because you are Oz, the Great and Terrible. You, only you, can give me courage," said the Lion.

The voice said:

"Kill the Wicked Witch of the West and I shall give you courage."

The Lion was very angry. But what could he do? He went back to his friends and repeated the Wizard's words.

"What shall we do now?" asked Dorothy.

"There is only one thing we can do,"¹ answered the Lion. "We can go to the West and kill the Wicked Witch of the West."

"But can we do it?" asked Dorothy.

"We *must* do it or I shall never have courage," said the Lion.

"And I shall never have brains," said the Scarecrow.

"And I shall never have a heart," said the Tin Woodman.

"And I shall never see Aunt Em and Uncle Henry," said Dorothy and began to cry.

"I think we *must* do it," said Dorothy after a short time. "The witch is very wicked and she does much harm to people."²

"I shall go with you, Dorothy," said the Lion.

"I shall go too," cried the Scarecrow.

"So shall I," said the Tin Woodman.

Early next morning Dorothy and her friends came up to the gate of the Emerald City.

The Green Soldier unlocked their eye-glasses and put them back in his big box. Then he opened the gate for our friends.

"How can we find the Wicked Witch of the West?" Dorothy asked him.

"Oh, it is very easy," said the Green Soldier. "Go to the West, only to the West. You will find her in the West."

They thanked him and said good-bye. Then they started to walk to the West.

They walked and walked for a long time. "Let us rest a little now," said Dorothy. She and Toto and the Lion lay down on the grass. They closed their eyes and soon they were asleep.³

¹ There is only one thing we can do. — *зд.* Мы можем сейчас сделать одно-единственное.

² she does much harm to people — она причиняет много вреда людям

³ soon they were asleep — вскоре они заснули

Now, readers, let me tell you that the Wicked Witch of the West had only one eye. But this eye was very strong. It was like a telescope and she could see very far.

So, as she sat down at her door and looked around, she saw Dorothy and her friends. They were very far off, but the Witch could see them and was very angry.

"I don't want strangers in my country," cried the Witch.

She ordered her slaves to come to her. Her slaves were monkeys with big, strong wings.

"Fly to those people. They are strangers, and I don't like strangers in my country," she said. "Kill the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow. Bring the little girl and the Lion here. They will work for me."

The monkeys flew to Dorothy and her friends. Some of the monkeys took the Tin Woodman and flew up into the air. Then they dropped the poor Woodman. He fell on the ground and broke his arms and legs.

Other monkeys took the Scarecrow. They pulled all the straw out of his body and his head. Then they flew into the air and dropped him into a tall tree.

Some of the monkeys were very big. They lifted the Cowardly Lion up and flew away with him. Two monkeys took Dorothy, who had Toto in her arms, and flew with them to the Witch's palace.¹ They brought the Lion and Dorothy to the Witch and then flew away.

Chapter Ten DOROTHY AT THE WITCH'S PALACE

When the monkeys brought Dorothy to the Wicked Witch of the West she looked down at Dorothy's feet. She was frightened. She saw the silver shoes and she knew that those silver shoes had great magic. Then the Witch looked into the little girl's eyes. They were clear and kind. So the Witch understood that Dorothy did not know that the shoes had magic and could help her.

¹ the Witch's ['witʃɪz] palace — дворец колдуньи

So the Witch thought: "I can make her my slave; she doesn't know that the silver shoes have magic. She doesn't know that they can help her!" Then she said to Dorothy:

"Come with me! I shall give you some work to do. You must work very well or I shall make an end of you.¹ I have made an end of the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman."

The Witch took the little girl to the kitchen. She ordered her to clean the kitchen, to wash the floor and the windows. Dorothy did not say a word. She began to work. She was afraid of the Witch.

Many days passed. Poor Dorothy worked hard from morning till night. Every night, when the Witch was asleep, she went to the yard and gave the Lion some food. She took it from the cupboard in the kitchen. The Witch gave the Lion no food because he did not want to work for her. The Lion was very hungry all the time.

Dorothy often cried. When she cried Toto sat at her feet and looked into her face. Neither Dorothy nor Toto could forget their friends, the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow. Where were they now? Dorothy and Toto were very sorry for them. "Shall we ever see them again, Toto?" said Dorothy.

The Wicked Witch wanted very much to get the silver shoes which were on Dorothy's feet. But the little girl took them off only at night or when she took a bath.² The Witch did not go to Dorothy's room at night because she was afraid of the dark. And she did not come near when Dorothy took a bath because she was afraid of water. But Dorothy did not know that.

Once Dorothy ran against a bucket of water³ in the kitchen. She fell down. In her fall one of the silver shoes came off. The Witch took it at once and quickly put it on her foot. The little girl was very angry. She cried to the Witch:

"Give me back my shoe!"

"No, I shall not give it to you. It is not your shoe, it is my shoe now!"

"You are a wicked old woman," cried Dorothy. "You must not take my shoe from me."

"Some day I shall have the other shoe too," said the Witch.

Dorothy was very angry now. She picked up the bucket of water and threw the water at the Witch.

At once the wicked woman gave a loud cry. She was frightened. Then suddenly she became smaller. Dorothy looked at her in surprise.

"What are you doing?" cried the Witch. "Don't you see I am melting!"¹

"I am very sorry," said Dorothy.

She was frightened too. The Witch melted and melted like sugar.

"The water! It will make an end of me. You knew it very well," cried the Witch.

"No, I didn't," answered Dorothy. "How could I know it?"

"Look out! Here I go!"² cried the Witch.

With these words she fell to the floor and became a brown dirty mass. Dorothy took another bucket of water and threw it at the mass. Then she saw her silver shoe. She took it quickly and put it on her foot again. Then she ran out into the yard and told the Lion about the end of the Wicked Witch of the West.

¹ or I shall make an end of you — иначе я разделаюсь с тобой

² when she took a bath — когда она мылась

³ ran against a bucket of water — споткнулась о ведро с водой

¹ Don't you see I am melting! — Разве ты не видишь, я таю!

² Look out! Here I go! — Осторожней! Я умираю!



Chapter Eleven

“A FRIEND IN NEED IS A FRIEND INDEED”¹

“First of all,”² said Dorothy, “we must find our friends — the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow.”

“Yes, let us find them,” said the Lion.

Dorothy asked some monkeys with wings to help her to find her comrades. They were glad to help Dorothy. They remembered the place where they dropped the Tin Woodman very well. So they flew there and soon found him.

The monkeys brought the Tin Woodman to the palace. Many

smiths worked for three days and four nights on his legs and arms. At last¹ the Woodman could walk again. Dorothy and the Lion were very happy. The Tin Woodman was happy too, because he was with his dear friends.

Now they wanted to find the Scarecrow. That was not so easy. They walked all that day and the next day. Then they saw a tall tree, and the Scarecrow in it. The Tin Woodman began to cut the tree. Soon the tree fell down. The Scarecrow fell down too.

They lifted him up and carried him back to the palace. They put nice clean straw into his body and he jumped to his feet. He thanked his dear friends.

“Now,” said Dorothy, “we must go back to the Wizard of Oz.”

“Yes,” said the Tin Woodman, “let us go back to the Emerald palace. I hope I shall get my heart now.”

“And I shall get my brains,” said the Scarecrow.

“And I shall get my courage,” said the Cowardly Lion.

“And I shall go back to Kansas,” cried Dorothy. “Oh, let us start for the Emerald City at once!”

And they did.² They walked and walked and walked. Many days passed before our four friends saw the green walls of the Emerald City.

They were very happy to be back in the Throne Room of the Great Wizard. There were no people in the room. They waited and waited. At last they heard a voice. It said:

“I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. What do you want of me?”

They looked in every corner of the Throne Room, but they did not see the Wizard there. At last Dorothy asked:

“Where are you, Great Wizard?”

“I am here,” said the Voice, “but you can’t see me.”

Then Dorothy said again:

“Now you must do what you promised us.”

“What did I promise you?” asked Oz.

“You promised to send me back to Kansas,” said the little girl.

“And you promised to give me brains,” said the Scarecrow.

“And you promised to give me a heart,” said the Tin Woodman.

“And you promised to give me courage,” said the Cowardly Lion.

¹ “A Friend in Need Is a Friend Indeed.” — *посл.* «Друзья познаются в беде».

² first of all — прежде всего

¹ at last — наконец

² And they did. — *зд.* И они отправились.

"But what about the Wicked Witch of the West?"¹ asked the Voice. "What happened to her?"

"The Witch melted," said Dorothy. "I threw a bucket of water at her, and she melted."

"Oh, she melted, you say that she melted?" said the Voice. "Well, come tomorrow morning. I must have time to think it over,"² said the Wizards.

"You had a lot of time to think it over," said the Tin Woodman. He was very angry.

"We don't want to wait, you must do it at once," said the Scarecrow.

"Yes, you must do it now," cried Dorothy.

And the Cowardly Lion roared. He wanted to frighten the Wizard. But he frightened little Toto. The little dog ran away. He ran against the screen that stood in a corner. The screen fell down. And what did they all see? They saw... Read the next chapter and you will know what our friends saw.

Chapter Twelve THE WIZARD'S STORY

Behind the screen they saw a little old man. He was terribly frightened.

"Who are you?" Dorothy cried out.

"I am Oz, the Great and Terrible," said the little old man in a small voice.³ "Don't kill me — please! Don't kill me! I shall do all you want me to do!"

The friends looked at him in great surprise. They did not know what to say.

"I saw Oz in the form of a Great Head," said Dorothy.

"I saw Oz in the form of a Beautiful Girl," said the Scarecrow.

"I saw Oz in the form of a Terrible Beast," cried the Woodman.

¹ But what about the Wicked Witch of the West? — А как со Злой Колдуньей Западной страны?

² to think it over — чтобы обдумать это

³ in a small voice — тоненьким голосом

"And I saw Oz in the form of a Ball of Fire," said the Lion. "No," said the little old man, "you are all wrong.¹ I fooled you all the time."

"Fooled?" cried Dorothy. "Are you *not* a great Wizard?"

"No, I am not," said the old man. "It is my secret. I am not a Wizard, I am a poor old man."

"You are a humbug," cried the Scarecrow.

"Yes, I *am*. I *am* a humbug."

"But this is terrible," said the Tin Woodman. "How shall I get my heart?"

"How shall I get my courage?" asked the Lion.

"And how shall I get my brains?" cried the Scarecrow.

"My dear friends," said Oz, "please don't think about those little things! Think about me and help me!"

"Who knows here that you are a humbug?" asked Dorothy.

"Only you four," answered Oz. "For many years I fooled all the people of the Land of Oz. They never see me and they think that I am great and terrible!"

"Tell us, please," said Dorothy. "How could you take the form of a Great Head?"

"That was one of my tricks," answered Oz. "come this way,² please, and I shall show you."

He took them to a small room behind the Throne Room. In a corner they saw the Great Head. It was made of thick paper.

"When you came to see me," the Wizard said to Dorothy, "I stood behind the screen and pulled a thread. So the eyes and the mouth opened and closed. Here are some other things!"

He showed this Scarecrow the dress and the mask of the Beautiful Girl. And he showed the Tin Woodman a lot of skins and said: "I made my Terrible Beast out of these skins. And my Ball of Fire was made of cotton and it burned brightly. And now I ask all of you to sit down. I am going to tell you my story."

And the Wizard began: "I was born³ in a small town near Kansas. One day a man from a circus showed me some tricks. I began to work at a circus. I became a balloonist."

¹ you are all wrong — вы все ошибаетесь

² come this way — пройдите сюда

³ I was born — я родился

"What is that?" asked Dorothy.

"A balloonist is a man who goes in a balloon high up in the sky. Every day I went in a balloon high up in the sky. It was my work at the circus, to go up in a balloon and do tricks."

"What for?" asked Dorothy.

"People saw my balloon and bought tickets to see the other interesting things in the circus," answered Oz.

"Oh," said the girl. "I understand."

"Well," continued the Wizard, "one evening I went up in my balloon. It was windy. And the wind carried the balloon very, very far away. On the morning of the second day I looked down and saw a strange and beautiful country. Soon the balloon came down. I saw a lot of people. Men, women and children ran up to me. 'Look, a great Wizard has fallen out of the sky!' they all cried. I didn't tell them that it was a mistake. I let them think¹ that I was a Wizard. They were afraid of me and were ready to do all I wanted them to do."

Chapter Thirteen THE OLD HUMBUG

"Go on, go on with your story," said Dorothy. "How did you become the Great Wizard?"

"I told them to build this city and my palace," the old man went on. "The good people did all I wanted them to do. And, they did it all very well. The country was green and beautiful. I liked it very much. I called this new city 'The Emerald City'. I told the people to wear green eye-glasses. From that time on² all was green for them."

"But isn't all around here green?" asked Dorothy.

"No, it isn't," answered the Wizard with a laugh. "Only the wall is green. But the good people think that they live in the emerald city. They think that my palace is made of emeralds, but it is made of glass. It was built many, many years ago. I was very young when

the balloon brought me here. And I am an old man now. I don't want to be a humbug now. I want to go home. All this time the people liked me and were happy. But I was not happy here. I was always afraid of the Witches of the East and the West. They were very wicked and they could kill me very easily. It was a very happy day for me when your house fell on the Wicked Witch of the East and killed her. But there was another Wicked Witch, the Witch of the West. I was afraid of her. So when you came, I told you to kill the Wicked Witch of the West. I was ready to promise to do all you wanted me to do. But, dear friends, I am very sorry. I can't do what I promised you to do. Please, don't be angry with me!"

"I think that you are a very bad man," said Dorothy.

"Oh, no, my dear," said the old man, "I am not a bad man, but I am a bad Wizard."

"But, this is terrible," said the Tin Woodman. "Who will give me a heart?"

"Who will give me some brains?" said the Scarecrow.

"Who will give me some courage?" asked the Cowardly Lion.

"And how can I get back to Kansas?" said Dorothy.

"My dear friends," said the little man, "I must think about all that. During all these years I learned magic. I shall try to give brains to the Scarecrow, courage to the Lion and a heart to the Tin Woodman. And I shall try to send you, my brave little girl, back to Kansas prairie. Come tomorrow morning and we shall see. Only don't tell my people that I am a humbug."

They promised him to keep his secret¹ and went back to their rooms. They were happy again because they were full of hopes now.

¹ I let them think — я позволил им думать

² from that time on — с этого времени

¹ to keep his secret — хранить его тайну



Chapter Fourteen THE WIZARD HELPS THE FOUR FRIENDS

Next morning the Scarecrow got up very early. He said to his friends: "I am going to the Great Wizard. At last I shall have brains in my head, not straw."

"I know you have no brains, but I like you as you are,¹" said Dorothy.

"You are very kind, dear Dorothy," said the Scarecrow, "but I want so much to be clever."

Then he said good-bye to his friends and went to the Throne Room.

There he knocked at the door.

¹ I like you as you are — ты мне и так нравишься

"Come in!" said Oz.

The Scarecrow found the little man in the small room behind the Throne Room.

"I have come to get my brains," he said. "You promised to put brains into my head."

"Oh, yes," said the Wizard, "I remember it very well. I am very sorry, but I must take your head off and put some brains into it."

"That's all right," said the Scarecrow. "Take it off!"

So the old man took the Scarecrow's head off and pulled the straw out of it. He put a lot of pins into the straw. He filled the head with all that. Then he put the head back on the Scarecrow's shoulders and said to him:

"Now you will be a great man. You have a lot of brains."

"Thank you very much," said the Scarecrow. "I think I am already wise¹ with my new brains."

He went back to his friends.

"Look how wise I am now!" he said.

"Yes, your head is very big now," said Dorothy. "But why are there so many pins in it?"

"Because my brains are now very sharp,²" answered the Scarecrow.

"Now I must go to the Wizard and get my heart," said the Tin Woodman. He went to the door of the Throne Room and knocked at it.

"Come in," said Oz. The Tin Woodman went into the Throne Room and said:

"You promised to give me a heart. I have come to get it."

"Very well," said the Wizard. "But I must cut a small hole in your breast³ first. Then I shall put a heart in it."

"All right," said the Tin Woodman, "do it please."

So the Wizard cut a small hole in the left side of the Woodman's breast. Then he went to a cupboard and took out of it a small box. Out of the box he took a small heart. It was made of red silk.

¹ wise [waɪz] — мудрый

² my brains are now very sharp [ʃɑ:p] — теперь у меня очень острый ум

³ in your breast [brest] — в твоей груди

Chapter Fifteen

THE WIZARD WANTS TO HELP DOROTHY

"It is a very beautiful heart, isn't it?" said Oz.

"Yes, it is!" said the Tin Woodman. "But is it a kind heart?"

"Oh, yes, it is, it's a very kind heart!" answered Oz.

The Tin Woodman thanked the Wizard many times. He was happy.

"I like this heart very much," he said. "And I shall never forget your help! Thank you very, very much!"

"That's all right," answered the Wizard.

The Woodman ran back to his friends.

The Cowardly Lion now went to the Throne Room and knocked at the door.

"Come in!" said the Wizard.

"I have come to get my courage," said the Lion.

"Very well," said the old man. "You will have it!"

He went to his cupboard and took out a green cup. It was a very beautiful cup. There was some red wine in it. The Wizard gave it to the Lion.

"Drink it," said Oz.

"What is it?" asked the Lion.

"You must drink it," said Oz. "It is courage. Courage must be *in* you! Do you understand? Drink it quickly."

The Lion took the cup and quickly drank from it.

"How are you now?"¹ asked Oz.

"Oh, I am fine!" answered the Lion. "I have a lot of courage! I am full of courage."² Thank you very, very much!"

And the happy Lion went to his friends.

Oz laughed very much when he thought of the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Cowardly Lion.

"How funny they are! I am glad I have made them happy," he thought. "I told them that I'm a bad Wizard, but they don't believe me and ask me to do things that I can't do. So *they* make a humbug of me!"

Then he thought of Dorothy.

"It was easy to make her three friends happy. But how can I help her? How can I take the poor child back to Kansas? I'm afraid I can't do it!"

Three days passed and Dorothy did not see Oz. And she did not know what to do. Her friends were very happy. The Scarecrow talked about the wonderful ideas in his head. The Tin Woodman walked round with his hand on his new heart. And the Lion said that he was very brave now.

But Dorothy was unhappy because she wanted to get home so much.

On the fourth day Oz sent for her. She ran to the Throne Room at once.

"Sit down, my dear," said Oz. "I think I know how to take you back home to Kansas."

"How?" asked Dorothy.

"Well, let me tell you what I think," said the little man. "You see,¹ when I came to this country, I came in a balloon. You came here through the air too. So I think the best way to get back to Kansas is through the air.² I can't make a cyclone. But I think I can make a balloon."

"How?" asked Dorothy.

"I shall make it out of silk," said the Wizard. "And then we must have hot air. Hot air is not so good as gas. But there is no gas in all the country. Hot air becomes cold very quickly, and then the balloon falls. But we have to try hot air."

"We?" cried the girl, "do you want to go with me?"

"Yes," answered Oz. "I am not going to stay here. I don't like to fool the good people of this country. I am afraid to go out of my rooms. I am afraid that some day they will know all about me. I must go away from this country, so I shall go with you to Kansas. I can work for a circus again."

"I am very glad to hear that you are going with me," said Dorothy. "I shall be very happy to have you with me."

"Thank you," he answered. "And now let us begin to work. You must help me to make the balloon."

¹ you see — видите ли

² the best way to get back to Kansas is through the air — зд. лучше всего вернуться в Канзас по воздуху

¹ How are you now? — Ну, как теперь?

² full of courage — преисполнен храбрости

They began to make a balloon out of silk. They worked and worked and in three days the balloon was ready.

The green soldier brought a big basket, and the old man tied it to the balloon.

When all was ready, the green soldier said to the people:

"The Great Oz is going to see his brother-wizard,¹ who lives in the air. He will say good-bye to you."

The Tin Woodman made a big fire in front of the palace. Oz held the balloon over the fire. Soon the balloon was full of hot air. The Wizard got into the basket and said to the people:

"I am now going away to visit my brother who lives in the sky. In my absence² the Scarecrow will rule the Emerald City. He is very clever now, so you must do what he tells you to do. I know he will be a very good ruler, so you must obey him and like him."

Then he said to Dorothy: "Come, Dorothy! Quick, quick! Or the balloon will rise!"

"I can't find Toto," cried the little girl. "I don't want to leave him here!"

At last she found her dear friend Toto. She took him in her arms and ran to the balloon. Oz put his hand to help her to get into the basket, but at that moment the balloon suddenly rose into the air.³ Poor Dorothy cried: "Come back, I want to go too."

"I can't come back, my dear," cried Oz from the basket. "Good-bye!"

"Good-bye!" cried the good people of the Emerald City. "Good-bye, Oz, good-bye! You were our good friend. You have built this beautiful Emerald City for us. We shall always remember you!"

Oz never came back, but the people always remembered him and loved him. They said: "Oz was always our friend. When he was here he built this wonderful Emerald City for us, and we were always happy with him!"

¹ is going to see his brother-wizard — отправляется навестить своего брата-волшебника

² in my absence — во время моего отсутствия

³ the balloon suddenly rose into the air — зд. воздушный шар внезапно взлетел в воздух

Chapter Sixteen DOROTHY IS UNHAPPY

Poor Dorothy cried all the time. And her friends were very sorry for her. The Tin Woodman cried a little too.

"Now I shall never see my Aunt Em and my Uncle Henry," she said to her friends one day.

They were all in the Throne Room. The Scarecrow was now the ruler of the Emerald City. He sat on the big throne and his comrades stood before him.

"Dear Dorothy," said the Scarecrow, "we all like this beautiful Emerald City. It is nice to live here, isn't it? Don't think about your Kansas, then we can all be happy here."

"But I don't want to live here," cried Dorothy. "I want to go back to Kansas and live with Aunt Em and Uncle Henry."

"But what can we do, how can we help you?" asked the Tin Woodman.

"I must think about it," said the Scarecrow. He thought and thought. Then he said: "Let us call the Green Soldier and ask him to help us."

So they called the Green Soldier.

"This little girl," the Scarecrow said to him, "wants to go back to Kansas. How can she do it?"

"Only Ozma¹ can help her," answered the Green Soldier.

"Who is Ozma?" said Dorothy.

"Ozma is the Good Witch of the South. She is the ruler of the Land of Oz. I know she will help you, she is very kind."

"How shall I find her?" asked Dorothy.

"You must go to the South," answered the Green Soldier. "It's very easy to find her palace. But the way there is full of dangers." With these words the soldier left the room.

The Scarecrow thought hard.² He thought and thought. Then he said: "The best thing for Dorothy is to go³ to Ozma and ask her for help."

¹ Ozma ['ozmə] — Озма

² The Scarecrow thought hard. — Страшила напряженно думал.

³ the best thing for Dorothy is to go — самое лучшее для Дороти — это пойти

“Yes, I shall go to the Country of the South,” said Dorothy. “I can’t stay here.”

“I shall go with Dorothy,” said the Lion. “I don’t want to stay in this city. I want to help Dorothy. I am not cowardly now.”

“Well,” said the Tin Woodman. “I shall go with Dorothy too. I have a big kind heart. It tells me that I must not leave Dorothy when she wants help.”

“When shall we start?” asked the Scarecrow.

“Are you going too?” they asked.

“Yes, I am!” said the Scarecrow. “Dorothy helped me to get my wonderful brains. How can I leave her now when she wants help?”

“Thank you all, my dear friends,” said Dorothy. “You are very kind to me. I want to start at once!”¹

“We shall start tomorrow morning,” said the Scarecrow.

Early next morning the Green Soldier unlocked their eye-glasses.

Then he opened the gate for them. Our friends started on their way.²

They were happy. Dorothy hoped to get home, and her friends were glad that they could help her.

It was a very long way to the Country of the South, and they met with many dangers. They walked through dark forests full of beasts. They went up high mountains. Wicked giants tried to kill them. But each time their love for one another³ helped them.

At last they came to a rich and happy country. It was the Country of the South.

They saw green fields, beautiful rivers, small houses and nice gardens full of fruit. At last they came to a very beautiful palace. It was Ozma’s palace. Three beautiful young girl-soldiers stood before the gate. One of them came up to Dorothy and asked: “Where do you come from?⁴ What do you want here?”

“We have come to see Ozma, the Good Witch of the South, who rules the Land of Oz,” said Dorothy. “Please, take us to her!”

“What is your name?” asked one of the girl-soldiers. “We shall go to Ozma and tell her about you.”

Dorothy told them her name. The girl-soldier went into the palace.

When she came back she said to Dorothy: “Ozma asks you to come in.”

The girl-soldier took our friends to a big Throne Room where they saw Ozma on a beautiful throne.

¹ at once — немедленно

² started on their way — отправились в путь

³ for one another — друг к другу

⁴ Where do you come from? — Откуда ты?



Chapter Seventeen OZMA HELPS DOROTHY

Ozma was young and beautiful. She had a white dress on. It was made of silk. She looked at Dorothy with her beautiful blue eyes and said:

“What can I do for you, child?”¹

Dorothy told the Good Witch her story.

“Now,” she said, “I want to go back to Kansas prairie to Aunt Em and Uncle Henry. My aunt is waiting for me and I love her very much! She thinks that some terrible thing has happened to me, and she is unhappy.”

¹ What can I do for you, child? — зд. Чем я могу быть тебе полезна, дитя?

“I hope,” said Ozma, “that I can help you, dear child. I can tell you how to get back to Kansas.”

“You are good¹ and beautiful,” cried Dorothy. “I shall be happy to go home. Please, please, tell me how to get back to Kansas.”

“Your silver shoes will carry you there. I see that you don’t know their magic,” said Ozma.

“Oh, they are magic shoes!” said Dorothy. “Now I understand why the Wicked Witch of the West wanted so much to take them from me. She knew their magic,” cried Dorothy. “But what must I do?”

“You must turn round on your left foot three times and say: ‘I want to get back to Kansas!’ That’s all,” said the Fairy.

“Oh,” cried Dorothy, “how easy it is! I want very, very much to go home. But now I am glad that I didn’t go home before. I have found good friends. I have seen many new and beautiful countries. But you know, East or West home is best.² But I want to know what my dear friends, the Lion, the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman want to do.”

“Let us ask them,” said Ozma. “Tell us, Scarecrow, what are you going to do?”

“I shall go back to the Emerald City,” said the Scarecrow. “Oz made me the ruler of the Emerald City and the people like me.”

Then Ozma asked the Tin Woodman and the Lion what they wanted to do.

“We don’t want to leave our friend, the Scarecrow,” they answered. “We want to go back to the Emerald City with him.”

“I am glad that you all like the Emerald City,” said Ozma. “It will be the capital of the Land of Oz from now on.”

“But shall I be the ruler of the Emerald City?” asked the Scarecrow.

“Yes, certainly,” said Ozma, “and you and your friends will live in the Emerald Palace.”

“Dear Ozma,” said Dorothy. “I know now that my friends will be happy here. May I go back to Kansas now?”

“Yes, my dear! Turn on your left foot three times and then tell the shoes to carry you home.”

¹ you are good — Вы добры

² East or West home is best. — посл. «В гостях хорошо, а дома лучше».

Dorothy thanked the Good Fairy, took Toto in her arms, and said good-bye to the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion. She was sorry to leave her friends. Then Ozma said: "Come again to the Emerald City, dear Dorothy. My birthday is a great holiday in the Land of Oz. I shall be glad to see you in my palace on that day."

"Oh, Dorothy, you must come, you must come!" cried the girl's friends.

"Yes, yes," answered Dorothy. With Toto in her arms she turned on her left foot three times and said to the silver shoes:

"Take me home to Aunt Em!"

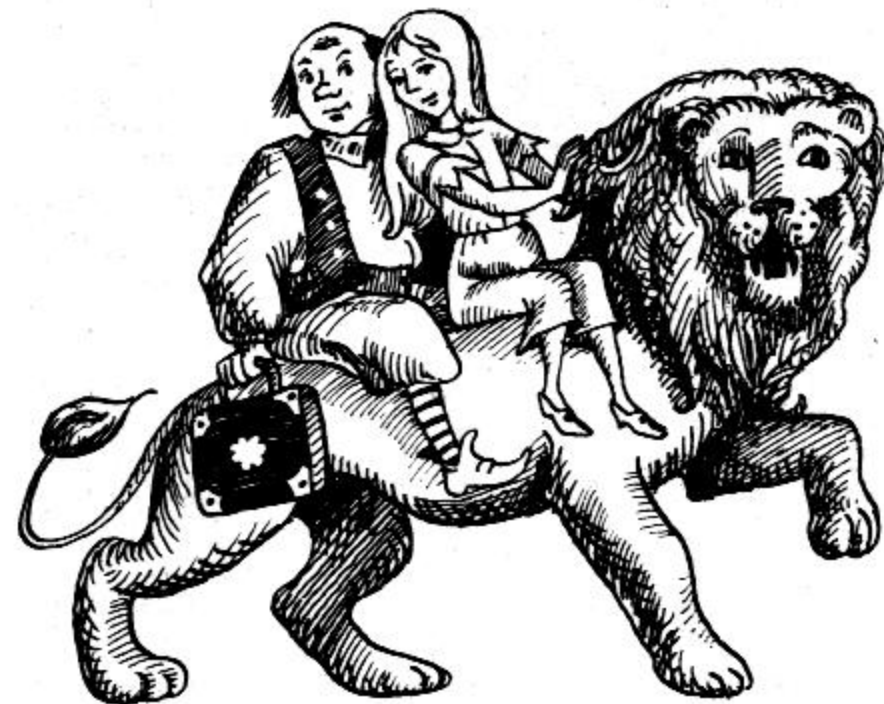
"Where am I?" said Dorothy. She saw the great Kansas prairie. And in front of her she saw Uncle Henry's new farm house.

Aunt Em saw Dorothy and ran out of the house.

"My dear child!" she cried and took the girl in her arms.¹ "Where have you been all this time?² Where did you come from?"

"From the Land of Oz," said Dorothy. "And here is Toto too. And oh, Aunt Em! I am so glad to be at home again!"

Part Two



¹ took the girl in her arms — заключила девочку в объятия

² Where have you been [bi:n] all this time? — зд. Где ты пропадала столько времени?



Chapter One BINI ARU AND HIS SON KIKI ARU¹

Well, dear readers, you now know a lot about the Land of Oz and its capital — the Emerald City. And you know that there are very many countries in the Land of Oz.

In one of these countries, the Munchkin Country, there lived an old man.² His name was Bini Aru.

This man had a secret. He knew a magic word. This word could change you into an animal, a bird, a flower, a stone. And it could change you back³ into your real form.

¹ Bini Aru ['bini 'ɑ:ru:], Kiki Aru ['kiki 'ɑ:ru:]

² there lived an old man — жил-был старик

³ it could change you back — оно могло вернуть вас снова

It was a very easy thing to do if you knew how to say the word. The word was *Pyrzqxgl*.

Can you, readers, say the word? I'm afraid you can't. But Bini Aru knew how to say it.

Usually when Bini Aru went far away from home and was hungry, he said: "I want to become a sheep: *Pyrzqxgl*!" He became a sheep at once. And he ate a lot of grass. Then the sheep said: "I want to be Bini Aru again. *Pyrzqxgl*!" and the magic changed the sheep back into an old man.

Now Bini Aru was afraid to forget the magic word. So he decided to write it in some secret place.¹ That was a clever idea. But where could he find a secret place? He thought and thought and at last he decided to find it in his house, in his room.

Bini Aru had a son. His son's name was Kiki. Kiki's father told him that he must not come into his room. But Kiki was a wicked boy. Once, when his father was not at home, Kiki opened the door of his father's room and went in.

As he came into the room, he stumbled over one of the floor boards.² He did not find any interesting things³ in his father's room. As he went back to the door he stumbled again over that floor board.

He looked at the board for a long time. "That's strange," he thought. "Why did I stumble over that board for a second time?"

Kiki took the board out, and saw some writing on the back of it.⁴ The writing told him how to read and say the magic word *Pyrzqxgl*. Now he knew that the word could change you into a bird or an animal. If you repeated the word again it could change you back into your real form: into a boy, girl, man or woman.

Now Kiki knew his father's secret. He took a piece of paper and made a copy of the writing.⁵ Then he put the board back in its place.

¹ secret place — тайник

² floor boards — половицы

³ did not find any interesting things — не нашел ничего интересного

⁴ saw some writing on the back of it — увидел на обратной стороне (доски) какую-то надпись

⁵ made a copy of the writing — переписал эту надпись

"Father must not know that I have his secret," thought the wicked boy.

He went into the garden and sat down under a tree. "I always wanted to go away from this country and visit the big world," he thought. "Now I can change my form and be a bird. Then I can fly and see the big world. And I can fly away from this country which I hate so much. But first I must learn the magic word and remember it. I don't want to be always a bird."

So he learned the word by heart,¹ repeated it a hundred times.

"Now I shall not forget the word," he thought. "And I must find the place for this paper in a secret place."

So he put it into a tin box and put the box in a corner of the garden under a big stone.

He decided to become a bird at once. So he stood in front of the house and said: "I want to become a big strong bird. I want to become a hawk! *Pyrzqxgl!*" And at once he became a grey hawk.

Chapter Two

KIKI WANTS TO BE VERY WICKED

Slowly Kiki rose into the air and flew away into a new world.

He flew for a long time. He flew from one country to another and from one city to another.

It was late now and Kiki was very tired. He decided to rest a little in a tree. From his tree he could see a big inn.

"What kind of food do hawks eat?" he thought. "And where can I get it? Do hawks sleep in trees? But I don't want to sleep in a tree. I want a bed, not a tree."

So he flew down to the ground and said: "I want to become Kiki Aru again: *Pyrzqxgl!*"

At once he became a boy. He went to the inn and asked the innkeeper to give him a good supper and a bed.

"Have you any money?" asked the innkeeper. "If you have no money you must go away at once."

Kiki had no money, so he could not stay at the hotel. The boy did not know what to do. He stood for a long time in the yard of the inn. Suddenly through an open window Kiki saw a big room with a table in the middle of it. There was a lot of gold pieces on the table. An old man went up to the table and began to count the money.

"For one of those gold pieces I can get supper and a bed," thought Kiki. So he changed his form and became a hawk again. The hawk flew into the room through the open window, caught up one of the gold pieces in its beak¹ and flew out again. The old man could not catch it.

Kiki flew into a tree and dropped the gold piece to the ground. Then he became a boy again. He picked up the gold piece from the ground and put it in his pocket.

"You will be sorry for that!"² cried a small voice³ over his head.

Kiki looked up and saw a little bird in the tree.

"Sorry for what?" he asked.

"Oh, I saw gold pieces too," said the little bird. "You took one gold piece from the table and flew away. Then you changed back into a boy. That's magic and magic is wicked. And to steal money is very, very wicked. You will be sorry one day."

"Well, all right, I am wicked," said Kiki. "I am glad of it. I always wanted to be wicked. But I didn't know how to do it."

"Haw, haw, haw!" Kiki heard a big voice behind him. "Very good, my boy! I'm glad I have met you!"

The little bird was frightened and flew away. Do you want to know who laughed behind Kiki?

Read the next chapter and you will find the answer.

¹ caught up one of the gold pieces in its beak — подхватил клювом одну золотую монету

² You will be sorry for that. — Ты пожалеешь об этом.

³ a small voice — тоненький голосок

¹ he learned... by heart — выучил... наизусть

Chapter Three

KIKI MEETS A STRANGE MAN

Kiki turned around and saw a strange old man. He had a fat, big body and very thin legs and arms. He had a big round face. His white beard was very long. Kiki saw that the pockets of his clothes were very big. They were full of jewels.

"Who are you?" asked Kiki.

"I was once King in the Nome Country¹ in the Land of Oz," said the strange old man. "But the people of Oz kicked me out of my country. Now I have no home and I must go from place to place."

"Why did they kick you out?" asked the boy.

"Well, in our time it happens very often," answered the King of Nomes. "People just come and kick their kings out of their countries. I thought I was a very good King. But those bad Oz people kicked me out of the country. I don't want to talk about it. Let's talk about other things. Who are you, boy? And where do you live?"

"My name is Kiki Aru," said the boy. "I lived in the Munchkin Country in the Land of Oz. Now I go from place to place like you."

The King looked at the boy for some time.

"Well," he said at last, "I know from the bird that you changed into a hawk and back again into your real form. Is that true?"

Kiki thought a little. "I must not be afraid of that Nome King. I shall tell him the truth," he decided at last.

"Yes," he said. "That is true."

"Then you are a Wizard," said the King. "That's very good! I had some very good magic tools, but my enemies, the Oz people, took them all away from me. And where are you going now?"

"I am going to the inn to get supper and bed," said Kiki.

"Have you the money for it?" asked the Nome.

"Yes," Kiki answered, "I have one gold piece."

"Which you stole," laughed the Nome. "Very good. And you are glad that you are wicked. I like you, young man. I shall go to the inn with you."

When they came into the inn, the innkeeper looked at Kiki

¹ I was once King in the Nome Country — когда-то я был королем страны Номов

very angrily, and said: "Why did you come again? You have no money for your supper and a bed."

Kiki showed the master his gold piece. Then the innkeeper turned to the Nome and asked him: "And how about you?¹ Have you the money for your supper and a bed?"

"I have some other good things," said the old man, "I shall show them to you."

He took out a bag from one of his pockets and threw a lot of jewels on the table. The innkeeper and Kiki looked at the jewels in surprise. Neither the man nor Kiki knew what to say.

Then the innkeeper ran to the kitchen to make a good supper for the Nome and Kiki.

"Where did you get so many jewels?" asked Kiki.

"Well, I can tell you all about it," said the Nome King. "When those wicked people of the Land of Oz were going to kick me out, they said: 'Take as many jewels as you can carry² and go away from the country.' So I made many pockets in my clothes and put a lot of jewels into those pockets. It is very nice to have jewels. For them you can get all you want!"

"Oh, don't speak so loud," said Kiki and looked around.

After supper the Nome King said to Kiki: "I hate all the Oz people. And I hate Ozma, Dorothy and her friends, the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman, the Cowardly Lion and the Wizard of Oz. And I wanted them to be unhappy. But I didn't know how to do it. Now with your help, I think I can do it. Will you help me to conquer the Land of Oz? I shall give you a lot of my jewels. You can have some fine big diamonds, rubies or emeralds."

"He wants to know my secret," thought the boy. "But I don't want him to know it, I shall not tell him my secret."

And Kiki said: "No."

"Then take all my jewels," said the Nome King.

"No, no, no," cried Kiki.

Now the Nome King was angry.

"Then," he said, "I shall tell the innkeeper that you stole that gold piece."

¹ And how about you? — А у Вас как?

² as many jewels as you can carry — столько драгоценностей, сколько сможешь унести

Kiki laughed at these words.

"Oh," he said, "I am not afraid. I can change into a lion and eat him up. Or I shall become a bird and fly away, and he will not catch me."

"Can you really do this?" asked the old man.

"Of course, I can," answered Kiki. "I can change you into a tree or a stone in a moment, and leave you here by the road."

Kiki's words frightened the wicked old man. But he wanted so much to know Kiki's secret! So he said: "I know what I can do. I can make you King of Oz. Tell me your secret and help me to conquer the Land of Oz. The Oz people are my enemies. I want to make them unhappy. I shall change them into trees or stones. When I have conquered the Oz people I shall go away to my country. You will never see me again. And from that day on you will be King of the Land of Oz and rule the country!"

"I shall think about it," said Kiki. "I don't want to talk about it!"

Chapter Four THE NOME'S PLANS

Next morning the old man said to Kiki: "If you want to help me to conquer the Oz people, we must start for the Land of Oz. That is a very long way."

"Oh, that's all right," answered Kiki. "I shall change form into a bird, and I shall be there in an hour."

"Then change me into a bird too," said the Nome, "and I shall fly with you to the Land of Oz."

"He is right," thought Kiki. "We can fly to the Land of Oz. I think I shall really be King of the Land of Oz."

And this is what the Nome thought: "The boy has a wonderful secret. But he doesn't want to tell me his secret. Of course, he is silly. He thinks he can become King of the Land of Oz. So I hope he will help me to conquer my enemies."

Then the old man said aloud: "Listen to me, boy! I shall tell you my plan. Let us fly to Oz in the form of birds. We shall fly to the big forests there. These forests are full of beasts. We shall

promise them to change all the beasts into men and women. And we shall ask them to help us to conquer the people of Oz. After that we shall give them the houses and all the good things of the Oz people."

"And what will happen then?" asked Kiki.

"Then," went on the Nome King, "we shall change all the people of Oz back into beasts and send them to live in the forests. That is a very good and easy plan, isn't it? I think that all the beasts in the Land of Oz will like my plan."

Kiki Aru did not know much about the Land of Oz. He did not know much about the beasts that lived in the forests of that country. He liked the old Nome's plan. But he was not going to tell him the magic word.

"He doesn't know my secret," he thought, "so he can do me no harm now. I shall become the ruler of Oz. Then I shall change him into a stone, and he will do me no harm then," thought the bad boy.

"I shall know Kiki's secret," the wicked Nome thought, "I shall change the boy into paper and burn him up."

Wicked people are always like this.¹ They try to harm one another. The Nome wanted to do harm to Kiki, and Kiki wanted to do harm to the Nome.

"It is a long way² to the Land of Oz," said the boy. "And it is very hot now. Let us wait. In the evening it will not be so hot and we shall fly then."

"All right," said the Nome. "Let us wait."

When evening came they went out into the yard and stopped under a big tree.

"Stay here for a few minutes," said Kiki. "I shall soon be back." He walked quickly away.

"Where is he going?" thought the Nome King, but he stood in his place.

Suddenly his form began to change. In a moment he became a great eagle. He was frightened. But then he saw another eagle, who was large and strong too.

¹ Wicked people are always like this. — Злые люди всегда так поступают.

² it is a long way — далеко

"Now we are ready to start," said the other eagle in Kiki's voice.

"I see now that the boy is not so silly," thought the Nome. "He is clever. He doesn't want me to hear his magic word." And the two eagles flew high up in the air.



Chapter Five BIRTHDAY PRESENTS FOR OZMA

Or course, dear readers, you remember Dorothy, the little girl from the great Kansas prairie. And I hope you remember her dear friend Ozma, the ruler of the Land of Oz.

Dorothy often came to the Emerald City to visit Ozma and to see her other dear friends: the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman, the Cowardly Lion and the Wizard of Oz. You remember that he wanted to fly away in a balloon. Well, the balloon fell down not far from the Emerald City and the Wizard came back. But he was not very sorry. He decided to study magic, because he did not want to be a humbug. Ozma gave him three rooms in her palace and he studied magic there. Now he really knew some magic.

One morning Dorothy took a walk in Ozma's beautiful garden. "What can I give Ozma for her birthday?" Dorothy thought.

Suddenly Dorothy saw the Tin Woodman in the garden.

"What will you give Ozma for her birthday?" she asked.

"It's a secret," answered the Tin Woodman. "But I can tell you. I have a song for her. I can tell you the words with which the song begins. Listen!

"I am crazy,¹
You are a daisy,²
Ozma dear!

You are a nice and beautiful fairy.
May your birthdays all be happy,³
Ozma dear!"

"Well, how do you like it, Dorothy?" asked the Tin Woodman.

"Is it good poetry?" asked Dorothy. She did not like the song.

"Of course, it is!" said the Tin Woodman. "I shall call it like this: 'When Ozma has a birthday we are all happy because we love dear Ozma very, very much'."

"I think it is very long," said Dorothy.

"I don't think so," said the Tin Woodman. "And what are *you* going to give Ozma for her birthday?"

"I don't know," said Dorothy. "But I want to give her a very nice present!"

Dorothy said good-bye to the Tin Woodman and walked to the back of the palace. There she saw the Scarecrow.

"Are you going to give Ozma a present for her birthday?" she asked.

"Of course, I am," said the Scarecrow.

"What are you going to give her?" said Dorothy.

"I am making a pair of straw shoes for her," answered the Scarecrow. "Ozma must like straw, because she likes *me* very much. She knows that my body is made of straw and I think she will like these nice straw shoes."

¹ I am crazy [ˈkreɪzi] — Я без ума (от Вас)

² You are a daisy [ˈdeɪzi] — эд. Вы просто душенька

³ May your birthdays all be happy — эд. Желаю Вам счастливых дней рождения

"And what can I give her for her birthday?" asked Dorothy.

"Oh, I don't know," said the Scarecrow. "Think hard, Dorothy, think very hard, and a good idea will come to you."

So Dorothy went to her room, where she sat down and thought hard about a birthday present for Ozma's birthday.

She thought and thought. Then she saw Toto and asked him: "What can I give Ozma for her birthday?"

"Oh, give her some bones," said the dog. "It will be a great present for her!"

"A bone is a good present for a dog, but not for a Fairy," said Dorothy. "I see I must think hard again."

Dorothy thought and thought and suddenly an idea came to her. She went to the Wizard of Oz. He was glad to see Dorothy.

"Wizard," said Dorothy, "will you help me to make a birthday present for Ozma?"

"I shall be very glad to do what I can for you and for Ozma," he answered.

"I want to make a great cake," said Dorothy. "And in the middle of it I am going to hide a lot of very small monkeys. We shall put the cake on the table. Then the monkeys will get out of the cake. They will dance on the table around the cake. And then Ozma will cut the cake."

"That's very clever, really very clever, my dear," said the Wizard and laughed. "But your monkeys must be very, very small. Where will you get such small monkeys?"

"I hope," said Dorothy, "that you will help me. In the big forest there are a lot of monkeys."

"Big monkeys," said the Wizard.

"Well," said Dorothy. "This is my plan: you and I go to that forest. There we shall catch some big monkeys. Then you will make them small. We shall put those small monkeys in a basket and bring them home. After that you will teach them how to dance. It will be our secret. And on Ozma's birthday we shall put them all into the cake. They will know by that time what they must do."

"All right," said the Wizard, "I think I can do what you want me to do. I am ready to go with you. Let's take the Cowardly Lion with us. We shall go to the forest on his back and he will roar and frighten all the beasts there."

Chapter Six

KIKI AND THE NOME IN THE BIG FOREST

There is a very big forest in the middle of the Land of Oz. The animals call it 'Gugu¹ Forest', because the King of this forest is the big yellow leopard Gugu.

All the animals of the Land of Oz live in this forest. There are hundreds and hundreds of them there. Gugu, the Leopard has three friends who help him to rule the forest: the Bear, the Wolf and the Grey Monkey. They are very strong and clever. The other animals in the forest are afraid of them. They obey them and do what the Leopard, the Wolf and the Grey Monkey want them to do.

One morning two eagles flew high over the forest. In the middle of the forest the eagles flew down and sat in a tall tree.

"Here we shall begin our work," said one eagle. It was the Nome King. You remember him of course, don't you?

"Are there many animals here?" asked Kiki.

"The forest is full of them," answered the Nome. "We must go to them and tell them about our plans. I hope they will like them and will help us to conquer the people of Oz. But first we must change into animals."

"What animals shall we become?" asked Kiki.

"I think," said the Nome, "that we must not look like other animals."²

"What animals must we become?" asked Kiki again.

"Let us have the heads of lions, the bodies of monkeys, the wings of eagles," said the Nome.

"I think that we shall be very strange animals," answered the boy.

"Are you afraid to look strange?"³ asked the Nome.

"All right," said Kiki. "You stay here and I shall fly away to another tree and say my magic word."

"No," said the Nome. "You must not fly away from me. Make your magic here."

"No," cried Kiki, "I shall not do that. You want to know my secret. But I shall not tell you my magic word."

The Nome was very angry with Kiki. But he said aloud:

"All right! Do as you like."¹

The Nome was afraid of Kiki. "He must not be angry with me,"² he thought, "or he will not change my form, and I shall always be an eagle. And I don't want that. Some day I shall know his secret and then..."

Kiki flew to a tree from which the Nome could not hear him. He said: "The Nome King and I must have the heads of lions, the bodies of monkeys and the wings of eagles: *Pyrzqxgl*."

At once his form changed. He became a strange animal with the head of a lion, the body of a monkey, and the wings of an eagle.

Kiki flew down to the Nome who was now a strange animal too. He looked like Kiki. And they flew down to the ground.

Chapter Seven

THE NOME TALKS TO THE LEOPARD, KING OF THE FOREST

On that morning Leopard the King and his three friends met on a big clearing in the centre of the forest.

"My dear friends," said Gugu, the King of the forest. "We must decide what we shall do with the animals who did not obey me. A monkey threw a big nut at a fox and broke its head. A bear wanted to kill a giraffe..."

Suddenly Gugu stopped. He and his friends saw two strange beasts on the clearing.

"What do they want here?"³ cried Gugu angrily.

The strange beasts came to them.

"Good morning, brothers," said the Nome.

"We are not your brothers," answered the Bear. "Who are you and why did you come to the forest of Gugu?"

¹ Gugu [ˈgu:gu:] — Гугу

² we must not look like other animals — мы не должны быть похожи на других животных

³ Are you afraid to look strange? — Ты что, боишься казаться странным?

¹ Do as you like. — Поступай как хочешь.

² he must not be angry with me — он не должен рассердиться на меня

³ What do they want here? — Что им здесь надо?

The Nome at once thought up a name,¹ and said: "We are two Li-Mon-Eags.² Our home is in the sky. We came down here to tell you that the people of Oz want to conquer the animals of the forest. The animals of the forest will become slaves of the Oz people. They will do all the work for them."

"We shall fight the Oz people," cried the Bear. "We shall make *them* our slaves." "That's right," said the Wolf and the Grey Monkey.

"Stop it,"³ cried Gugu the King. His friends obeyed him at once. He looked at the strange beasts for a long time.

"The people of Oz," he said at last, "are neither our friends, nor our enemies. They have no slaves, and they do not want to have slaves. I know they don't want to conquer us. I think you are telling us lies,⁴ you strange Li-Mon-Eags."

"Oh, I give you my word, it is the truth," cried the Nome. "I shall tell you how we learned about it. One day, my comrade and I flew to a forest near the Emerald City. There we saw a lot of people. We heard what they said. They said: 'We shall conquer the animals of the forest and make them our slaves.'"

"We live in the sky," went on the Nome, "but we are animals too and we want to help you and that is why we are here."

The Nome stopped and looked at Gugu and his friends. "And how can you help us?" asked Gugu the King. "Well," said the Nome, "the Land of Oz is a very rich country. The people of Oz have very many nice things. They have houses with good beds, they have good food, nice clothes, jewels and many, many other good things. Let us conquer them before they conquer you. Then you will have all the nice things that they now have. The animals will become the masters of the people. The people will become the slaves of the animals."

"But we don't want to become their masters," said the Bear. "And we don't know what to do with their things."

"Oh, I shall tell you what we are going to do for you," said the Nome. "We are magicians. This is my plan. First you must conquer

the Oz people. After that we shall change them into animals and send them to the forest to live there. Then we shall change all the animals of this forest into men and women. Then you will live in the Emerald City and you will know what to do with the nice things of the Oz people."

For a moment they did not speak.¹ Then Leopard the King said: "Show us that you can really change us. If you are magicians — change Loo² the Wolf into a man. Then we shall believe you. If you can't do it, we shall not believe you. And we shall kill you."

"All right," said the Nome. "My comrade will do it, not I."

Kiki went a little way⁴ from the animals and said his magic word. The Wolf at once became a fat little man in a red costume. Gugu the King was frightened. He could not say a word.

After a moment he said to the Nome: "Yes, now we believe you."

Gugu spoke now like a friend.

Then he turned to the animals of the forest. He said: "What shall we say to our friends, the Li-Mon-Eags? I want the animals of our forest to know all about their plan. They will decide what answer we must give. You, Grey Monkey, go and tell all the animals to come to this clearing tomorrow morning. We shall have a meeting here. The magician will talk to the animals and tell them his plan. If they decide to fight⁴ the Oz people, we shall fight them too. And now," he said to the Nome, "you must change our comrade into a wolf again."

So Kiki changed the man back into a wolf. The Wolf ran away happy. Gugu and his friends went away too.

"I hope they will like our plan," said the Nome. "I hope that the animals will fight and conquer the Land of Oz. Then I shall punish Ozma and Dorothy and all my enemies." And the Nome laughed.

"Don't forget that all the work is done by *me*,⁵" said Kiki.

¹ For a moment they did not speak. — На какое-то время они замолчали.

² Loo [lu:] — Лу

³ Kiki went a little way — Кики отошел в сторону

⁴ if they decide to fight — если они решат сражаться

⁵ all the work is done by *me* — вся работа проделана мною

¹ thought up a name — придумал имя

² Li-Mon-Eags [ˈlaɪˈmɒnˈiːgɪz] — сокр. от Lion-Monkey-Eagles

³ Stop it. — Прекратите.

⁴ you are telling us lies [laɪz] — Вы лжете нам

"No, I shall not forget," said the Nome. "I shall not forget. And I promise you that you will be King of the Land of Oz."

"But will King Gugu let me be King?"¹ asked the boy.

"Oh, don't be afraid of *him*," said the wicked Nome. "You can change him into a tree, and a tree can't do you any harm!"²

"Of course," answered Kiki. But he thought: "I shall change the Nome into a tree too. I don't like him. He is very bad. He is not a real friend. He can do much harm."

And the Nome thought: "I shall learn the magic word and change Kiki into a stone."

So, you see, dear readers, that wicked people can never be real friends.

Chapter Eight THE MEETING ON THE CLEARING

Next morning all the animals of the forest came to the big clearing. There were hundreds and hundreds of beasts. There were wolves and foxes, bears, lions and monkeys, and many other animals. Leopard the King sat down on a big stone which was his throne.

"Brothers," he said in his loud voice, "yesterday two beasts of a very strange form came to our forest. They are great magicians. They can change the forms of people and animals. They live in the sky. They are here because they want to help us. My friends — the Bear, the Wolf, the Grey Monkey and I saw their magic work."³ Now one of the magicians wants to speak to you. Will you listen to him?"

"Yes, yes, let him speak!" cried all the animals.

So the Nome came out in front of the animals. The animals looked at him in great surprise. They looked at his lion's head, his eagle's wings and his monkey's body.

The Nome spoke for a long time. When he finished one of the animals said: "Can you really change animals into men, women and children?"

"Yes, he can, he can!" cried the Wolf.

Now Gugu, the King of the forest, got up from his throne and said: "You have heard the plan of our friends, haven't you? Now you must give your answer. Do you like the plan?"

"Yes," cried some of the animals.

"No," cried others. Some animals said neither yes nor no.

Gugu the King looked at the animals and said: "Think, think hard. I am waiting for your answer. If you are ready to answer now, I shall hear you."

The animals began to talk to one another. Some of them wanted to fight the Oz people, others did not want to fight them. And there were some beasts who did not want even to talk about fighting. The noise was so great that they could not hear one another. Suddenly the noise stopped. All the animals looked in great surprise at a strange group which they suddenly saw on the clearing.

¹ will King Gugu let me be King — позволит ли мне Король Гугу стать королем

² a tree can't do you any harm — дерево не сможет причинить тебе никакого вреда

³ saw their magic work — видели, как они делают чудеса



Chapter Nine DOROTHY AND THE WIZARD COME TO THE MEETING OF THE ANIMALS

A great Lion, very big and very strong came up to the clearing. A little girl was on his back. Behind the little girl sat a funny little man. In his right hand he had a black bag. The little girl and the funny little man jumped down from the Lion's back and stood before Gugu the King.

"Who are you?" asked Gugu and looked at the girl. All the animals looked at her too.

"I am Dorothy," answered the girl.

"And who is the man with you?" asked the King.

"This man is the Wizard of Oz," answered the girl. "He is my true friend. He can do wonderful magic tricks. And here is my other friend, the Cowardly Lion. We all live in the Emerald City."

"Were you not afraid to come here?" asked Gugu the King.

"Oh, no," answered the little girl. "I am never afraid when I am with the Cowardly Lion. I know him very well. He doesn't like to fight. That is why we call him 'Cowardly'. But when he *must* fight he fights so well that no animal can conquer him."

The animals of the forest stood around Dorothy and her friends. They listened with great interest to their words.

They forgot all about the two Li-Mon-Eags. But what became of them? Of course, you understand that when the Nome saw Dorothy and her friends he was terribly frightened. He knew them at once. He said to Kiki: "Here are my enemies. They are very dangerous." Then he thought: "I hope that they will not know me in this animal form. They will not know who I am."

And what did Kiki do? He stood all the time behind the Nome. He was terribly frightened too. "Now they will learn our plan to conquer the Oz people," he thought. "They will tell the animals of the forest all about us. The animals will kill us."

Then he looked at the Nome and thought: "Oh, that wicked Nome! I hate him! How I hate him! I am the magician. I know the magic word and I don't want to obey him. He forgets that I am not his slave. No, I shall not obey him now!"

Then he looked at the Wizard and thought: "That Wizard is a real magician. I think he has brought his magic tools in that black bag. I want to have his magic tools. My magic word cannot do what his magic tools can."

Kiki thought hard. He ran away from the clearing into the forest and said: "The Wizard of Oz must become a fox: *Pyrzqxgl*."

Suddenly the Wizard's body began to change its form. In a moment he became a fox. His black box fell to the ground. Kiki flew up to the Wizard, caught up his bag and flew away.

The fox cried out as loud as he could: "There is a wicked magician here. Help! Help!"

His friends heard his cry and were frightened. Dorothy heard his cry too. She looked at her poor friend. Then she cried too: "Help!" But the next moment the little girl's form began to change. Dorothy became a little white lamb.

The Cowardly Lion was terribly angry. He looked around. He wanted to find the wicked magician and to kill him.

But Kiki said his magic word again. In a moment the great Lion became a little boy. Now the Lion could not harm Kiki.

"Now I shall change the wicked Nome too," thought Kiki. And he changed the Nome into... a goose.

"I am afraid of Gugu," thought Kiki. "He is clever and can harm me." So he changed Gugu into a fat woman.

Then he flew to a very high tree. He looked down from the tree at the fox, at the little Lamb, at the Goose, at the Boy and the Fat Woman.

"Oh, how funny they look,"¹ he cried and he laughed and laughed.

Chapter Ten THE NOME TRIES TO FIND KIKI

All the animals on the clearing were terribly frightened now. "Let us run away from this place," they all cried. "The magician can change our forms too." And they all ran away from the clearing very quickly.

Only the little Lamb, the Fox, the Boy, and the Fat Woman stayed on the clearing. They did not know what to do. So they did not speak, they only looked at one another.

"Who are you?" the Boy asked the Fat Woman.

"And who are you?" the Fox asked the Lamb.

"I am Dorothy," said the Lamb.

"I am the Wizard," said the Fox.

"I am the Cowardly Lion," said the Munchkin Boy.

"I am Gugu the King," said the Fat Woman.

But when they asked the Goose who he really was, the Nome did not want to tell them his name. He said: "I am just a goose, and that is all. And I don't remember what I was before."

Kiki Aru flew with the Wizard's black bag to a high tree. "Here they can't see me," he thought. "I shall open the Wizard's black bag and take his magic tools. With the tools I can do magic which I can't do with my one magic word."

He opened the bag and took out the magic tools one by one.²

¹ how funny they look — до чего они смешные

² one by one — по очереди

He looked at them for a long time. At last he said: "No, I don't know what to do with these magic tools."

Of course, he did not know what to do with the magic tools. Who was Kiki? He was not a magician. He was a wicked boy who knew only how to say the magic word *Pyrzqxgl*. So Kiki hung the black bag on the tree and began to think of a new plan.

Dorothy and her friends, the Nome and Gugu the King were still on the clearing. They did not know what to do. "This is magic," said the Wizard. "It's not difficult to break this magic¹ with my magic tools. But the tools are in my black bag. And where is the bag? Who knows?"

There was no answer.

"Let us look for the bag!" said Dorothy. "I think we can find it."

They all looked and looked for the black bag but could not find it.

The Goose, who was really the Nome, wanted to find it too. But he wanted to hide it from the Wizard. He was afraid of the Wizard.

"They will find the bag," he thought, "and then the Wizard will change us back to our real form. Then they will know me. And then they will kick me out of the Land of Oz. I shall never punish them!" So the Goose looked for the black bag too but he could not find it. Then he decided to run away. "I must run away from here," he thought. "And I must find Kiki Aru. I want him to change me back into a Li-Mon-Eag."

He looked around. Then he ran away as quickly as he could.² When he was far away from Dorothy and her friends he began to call: "Kiki Aru, Kiki Aru!"

Kiki Aru was in his tree. He heard the Nome's cries but he could not decide what to do next.³

The boy hated the Nome and was afraid of him. But he needed his help. So when he heard the Nome's cries: "Kiki Aru! Quack-quack!⁴ Kiki Aru!" he flew down to the ground and said to the Nome: "I am here. What do you want of me?"

¹ it's not difficult to break this magic — нетрудно разбить эти чары

² he ran away as quickly as he could — побежал прочь изо всех сил

³ he could not decide what to do next — он не мог решить, что же ему дальше делать

⁴ Quack-quack! ['kwæk 'kwæk] — Га-га-га! (звукоподражание)

"Why did you do all this?" asked the Goose.

"Because I wanted to do it," answered Kiki. "You must remember that I am the magician, not you. I don't want to obey you."

The Goose listened and thought: "Yes, I must obey the boy now. I hope I shall know his secret some day. Then I shall change *him* into a goose."

And he said aloud: "You are right, Kiki. Now you will be my master. But you must help me to conquer the Land of Oz. You can do it, can't you?"

"How can I help you?" asked the boy.

"First,¹ change me back into the form of a Li-Mon-Eag. After that we can talk."

"Wait a moment," said Kiki. He flew back to his tree and said: "I want the Goose to become a Li-Mon-Eag again. *Pyrzqxgl*."

His magic word changed the Goose into a Li-Mon-Eag at once.

"Good," cried the Nome. He was very happy. "Now let us find a place where we can talk about my new plan. I don't want the animals to listen to our talk."

They went to a small clearing in the forest and sat down on the ground. The Nome said: "Listen to me, Kiki. I shall tell you my plan."

Chapter Eleven

THE WIZARD LEARNS KIKI'S SECRET

At that moment a Fox came up to the clearing. The Nome and Kiki did not see the Fox, because it was behind them. But the Fox was really the Wizard of Oz. He looked at the two Li-Mon-Eags and thought: "There are two of them now. And a short time ago there was only one Li-Mon-Eag. The Goose changed into the beast! I understand it all now. It is all clear now. At last I can tell who changed our forms. The Goose and his comrade — the wicked magician. These two beasts are our enemies. I must watch them all the time and see what they will do next."

The Wizard-Fox came up to Kiki Aru and the Nome. There

¹ first — сперва

was a big tree near them with a big hole in it. "I shall hide in the hole and see what those beasts will do next," thought the Wizard. He jumped into the hole and watched the two Li-Mon-Eags. And he heard their talk.

"Well," said the Nome to Kiki, "this is my plan. Look at the trees in the forest. They are full of monkeys. We shall change fifty little monkeys into fifty soldiers. The Oz people don't know how to fight. They will be frightened and the soldiers will conquer them in a day or two.¹"

Kiki thought for some time and then said: "I like your plan."

"Can you change those fifty little monkeys all at once?²" asked the Nome.

"No, I can't," answered Kiki. "I must change them one at a time.³ Stay here, and I shall go and change the first monkey."

"But where are you going?" asked the Nome.

"You know very well that I can't say the magic word when you are near. I shall go where you cannot hear me," answered Kiki.

The Nome was very angry when he heard that. But he said: "All right!"

Kiki got up and went to a tree which stood near them. It was just the tree in which the Wizard-Fox was. Kiki Aru ran up to the tree and tried to look into the hole. It was very dark in the hole. So Kiki did not see the Fox.

Kiki said: "I want that monkey in the big tree on the left to become a soldier with a big sword: *Pyrzqxgl*!" Then he ran back to the Nome.

"I am so glad I know the magic word now," thought the Wizard. "I can change the forms of people and animals now. But first I must remember the word."

In a moment a soldier with a big sword stood on the clearing.

"Good," cried the Nome. "Change the other monkeys, quick!"

So Kiki ran back to the tree with the hole in it and said his magic word again. He ran to the tree and back six times.

Soon six big soldiers with swords stood in the forest.

When Kiki ran back to the Nome for the sixth time the Wizard-

¹ in a day or two — за один-два дня

² all at once — сразу всех

³ one at a time — по одному

Fox put his head out of the hole. He thought: "I have heard the magic word six times. Now I shall try and say it."

And he said aloud: "This animal Li-Mon-Eag must become a small nut: *Pyrzqxgl*".

At once Kiki changed into a small nut. The Wizard cried out with joy and jumped out of the hole.

"Now I shall change the other one into a big nut," he thought.

At that moment the Nome rose from the ground and looked around. He saw the Fox, but he did not see Kiki. "Where is Kiki, why did he not come back?" he thought. He was frightened.

"This Li-Mon-Eag must become a big nut: *Pyrzqxgl*" cried the Wizard-Fox. But, as you see, the order of the letters in the word was wrong. He did not say the magic word in the right way.¹ So the Nome's form did not change.

The Nome understood at once that it was the magic word. He ran to the Fox and said: "You must become a goose: *Pyrqzxl*"

But the Nome said the word in the wrong way² too — that's why the Wizard-Fox's form did not change. He ran away from the angry Nome and hid behind a big tree.

The Nome King repeated the magic word many times but every time he said it in the wrong way. The Fox behind the tree repeated the word many times too, and suddenly he said it in the right way. And the Nome at once became a big nut. The Wizard-Fox said: "I want my real form again. I want to become a man: *Pyrzqxgl*."

At once he became the Wizard of Oz again. He picked up the big nut and the small nut. Then he put them into his pocket and ran back to the big clearing, to his friends, as quickly as he could.

Chapter Twelve THE WIZARD CHANGES HIS FRIENDS' FORMS AGAIN

Dorothy, who was a little Lamb, cried out with joy when she saw her friend the Wizard in his real form. The Fat Woman

¹ in the right way — правильно, как следует

² in the wrong way — неправильно

and the Munchkin Boy stood around him and looked at him in great surprise.

"How wonderful!" they cried. "How did it happen? Who changed you back into your real form?"

"First, I shall change you all into your real forms and then I shall tell you all about it," answered the Wizard. He said the magic word and changed his friends, one by one, back into their real forms. Then he told his happy friends of his adventures and showed them the two nuts.

"Now," he said, "we must not be afraid of those two wicked beasts. They are only nuts now. Nuts can't speak, so they can't change their forms and can't harm us."

"But listen," cried Dorothy. "What about the soldiers?¹ Where are they now?"

"I forgot all about them,"² said the Wizard. "But I think they must be in the forest. Let's go there at once!"

The Wizard was right. The soldiers were in the forest. They were so big and tall that they could not make a step in the thick forest. Hundreds and hundreds of monkeys sat in the trees. They looked at the soldiers and talked to one another.³ They made a great noise. The Wizard and his friends could not hear each other.

The Wizard had no magic tools, you remember, but now he knew the magic word *Pyrzqxgl* and he quickly changed the six soldiers into monkeys.

"The Wizard is a very good man," cried the monkeys in the trees. "We like him, we want to thank him."

"I must tell you," said the Wizard, "that I want to take twelve monkeys with me to the Emerald City. Who wants to come with me?"

At once twelve monkeys cried: "We are ready to go with you. Take us with you, Wizard."

Then the Wizard said: "You see, I want only twelve little monkeys. I shall make you very, very small. What will you say to this?"

The monkeys cried: "All right, make us small!"

¹ What about the soldiers? — А как обстоят дела с солдатами?

² I forgot all about them. — Я совершенно забыл о них.

³ talked to one another — говорили друг с другом

The Wizard put a small basket on the ground and said: "My monkeys must become very small: *Pyrzqxg!*" And suddenly all saw in the basket twelve very, very small monkeys.

"And now we shall say good-bye to you," said the Wizard of Oz. "I promise to bring back your brothers and sisters soon. They will be happy in the Emerald City. But this is their home. And you know that 'East or West home is best!'"

Dorothy and the Wizard said good-bye to all their friends.

"Good-bye, friends," said Gugu the Leopard. "I like you. I know that you are the true friends of animals. We shall always be glad to see you in our forest. Good-bye!"

The Wizard and Dorothy went away on the back of the Cowardly Lion. The basket with the little monkeys in it was in the Wizard's hand.

For a long time the monkeys in the trees cried "Good-bye" to their new friends.



Chapter Thirteen OZMA'S BIRTHDAY

At last our friends came home. The Wizard began to teach the twelve little monkeys at once. They were very clever. The Wizard was very kind to them and the monkeys loved him very much. Soon they were ready to do all the tricks which the Wizard wanted them to do.

At last Ozma's birthday came. You must know that Ozma's birthday was always a great holiday in the Land of Oz. On that day all the people in all the countries of the Land of Oz decorated their houses with flowers and flags. The people sang, danced and played games.

Ozma's palace stood in the middle of a big garden. The garden was full of flowers and fountains. Hundreds and hundreds of birds sang in this garden.

There was some writing on a board near one of the fountains. This is what that writing said:

Don't Drink From That Fountain!
If you drink the water from this fountain
You Will Forget All That You Knew Before!
You will forget even
Your Name!

On her birthday Ozma always gave a great dinner at her Emerald Palace. And on that day, too, Ozma's friends, people and animals, came to her palace from all the countries of the Land of Oz.

Ozma was always glad to see her friends, she laughed and talked with all of them.

Then four beautiful girls brought in a very big cake and put it in the middle of the table. There were flowers and lighted candles¹ on it. In the centre of the cake there were letters which were made of sugar:

OZMA'S BIRTHDAY CAKE
from DOROTHY and the WIZARD

Ozma cried with joy: "Oh, how beautiful!"

"And now," cried Dorothy, "now you must cut the cake and give a piece to each of us."

Ozma took a knife and cut the cake. Suddenly a little monkey jumped out of it. Then eleven more² monkeys jumped out of the cake.

"Many happy returns,"³ cried the monkeys. They danced and did some acrobatic tricks. All their tricks were very funny. Ozma and her friends laughed very much.

"Thank you, dear Dorothy," said Ozma, "and you, dear Wizard, for your wonderful present."

Dorothy and her friend, the old Wizard, were very glad that Ozma liked their birthday cake so much.

After that the Tin Woodman sang his song, and all Ozma's friends liked it very much too!

¹ lighted candles — зажженные свечи

² eleven more — еще одиннадцать

³ Many happy returns [ɪ'tə:nz]. — Поздравляем с днем рождения.

On the morning after Ozma's birthday, the Wizard and Dorothy went out for a walk in Ozma's wonderful garden. Ozma too came out of her Emerald Palace for a walk in the garden. She came up to Dorothy and the Wizard and said: "You have told me a lot about your adventures in the Gugu Forest. But I want you to tell me more about them. I want to know how you got those little monkeys for the birthday cake."

So they sat down on an emerald bench opposite one of the fountains. Dorothy and the Wizard began to tell Ozma about their adventures. Ozma listened to them with great interest. Then she said to the Wizard: "So you changed those terrible Li-Mon-Eags into nuts. And where are they now?"

"Oh, I forgot about them," answered the Wizard. "They must be in my pocket." And he took two nuts out of his pocket and showed them to Ozma.

Ozma looked at the nuts for a long time and then said: "No, I don't think that it is right to leave them in the form of nuts. I think, Wizard, that you must change them back into their real forms."

"Don't forget, Ozma, that they are very wicked," said the Wizard. "And we don't know their real forms, do we?"¹

"No, no, but we must not be afraid of two living things,"² said Ozma. Ozma was very, very kind. "Even if they are our enemies, or wicked magicians," she went on.

"I am afraid, Ozma," said the little man, "that they know some magic which can do us much harm."

"I have an idea," cried Dorothy. "Please, do as I tell you, and their magic will not harm us."

"What is it, my dear?" asked Ozma.

"Look at that writing on the board," said the girl. "Read it! The writing says that we must not drink from that fountain or we shall forget all that we knew before, even our names. Let the Wizard change the nuts into their real forms and make them thirsty."³ Then

¹ And we don't know their real forms, do we? — И мы не знаем, каков их настоящий вид, не так ли?

² living things — живые существа

³ Let the Wizard change the nuts into their real forms and make them thirsty. — Пусть волшебник вернет орехам их прежний вид и заставит их испытывать жажду.

they will run to the fountain and drink some water. Then they will forget all, even their names.”

“That’s not a bad idea,” said the Wizard.

“I think it is a very good idea,” said Ozma. “Run for a cup, girl!”

Chapter Fourteen AGAIN KIKI AND THE NOME

Dorothy ran away and was soon back¹ with a cup. She put the cup near the fountain. The Wizard put the small nut near the fountain too. He said: “That little nut must take its real form. And I want it to become thirsty! *Pyrzqxgl*”

An once the nut changed into Kiki Aru, the boy from the Munchkin Country.

The boy looked around in great surprise. He could not understand where he was. And he was terribly thirsty. He was very glad when he saw the cup and the fountain. He took up the cup and ran to the fountain. And he drank and drank, one cup after another. He forgot his name and the name of the country he lived in. He looked around and saw Ozma, the Wizard and Dorothy. He did not remember either their names or who they were.² But he found Ozma very beautiful. And he liked the little girl and the old man. So he smiled to them. For the first time in his life Kiki smiled a kind and happy smile.

Dorothy liked his smile. “Come and sit here beside me,” she said to the boy. The boy obeyed her. He ran to her and sat down on the bench beside her.

“I thought you were a wicked magician, and you are only a boy,” she said.

“What is a magician and what is a boy?” he asked.

“Don’t you know?” asked Dorothy.

“No, I don’t,” he answered.

“He is not wicked now,” said Ozma. “He is a very nice boy. He will live with us and we shall teach him to be kind and to love people. It is very good that he has forgotten his past. And now,” she said to the Wizard, “please change the big nut. We want to see the boy’s comrade.”

The Wizard put the big nut on the ground near the fountain and said: “I want this big nut to take its real form and become very thirsty: *Pyrzqxgl*.”

In a moment the Nome stood before our friends. He was terribly thirsty and looked only at the water in the fountain. He was going to drink and took up the cup.

At that moment Dorothy cried out:

“Why,¹ it’s the old Nome King!”

The old man looked at them and cried out very angrily:

“Yes, I am the Nome King. I am going to conquer the Land of Oz. And I shall punish all the people in the countries of the Land of Oz. You kicked me out of my country. Now I shall fight you and I shall kick you out of the Land of Oz.”

His long white hair rose up in the air. His eyes were terrible. Ozma and her friends looked at their enemy in great surprise and could not say a word.

The Nome laughed his wicked laugh.² He drank the water from the cup. Then he threw the cup on the ground and said angrily: “And now... and now... and...”

He touched his head with his hand and thought for some time.

“I have forgotten what I told you about. What was it?” he asked with a smile.

“Can’t you remember it?”³ asked the Wizard.

“No. I can’t,” said the Nome. “I have forgotten...”

“Who are you?” asked Dorothy.

The Nome tried to remember. He thought for some time. Then he said: “I... don’t know... who I am, I can’t remember.”

“And don’t you know who *we* are?” asked Dorothy.

¹ why — о (восклицание)

² The Nome laughed his wicked laugh. — Ном засмеялся своим злым смехом.

³ Can’t you remember it? — Неужели ты не можешь вспомнить?

¹ and was soon back — и скоро вернулась

² He did not remember either their names or who they were. — Он не помнил ни их имен, ни того, кем они были.

“No, I don’t,” said the Nome.

“Do you know this boy?” asked Ozma.

The old man looked at Kiki for a long time. Then he said:

“No, I don’t. I don’t know either him or you.”

“What shall we do with him?” asked the Wizard.

“He has forgotten his past, and he will not do any harm now,” said Ozma. “We must not send him away from the Land of Oz, because then he will become wicked again. We must find a place and some work for him in the Land of Oz. Here he will see only good and kind people. So he will become as good and kind as they are.¹”

So Kiki Aru and the Nome found a new home in the Emerald City, the capital of the Land of Oz. Ozma, Dorothy and the Wizard taught the boy and the old man to be kind and to love people. Soon Kiki and the Nome became as good and kind as all the people in the Land of Oz.

Activities



¹ as good and kind as they are — таким же хорошим и добрым, как все они

PART ONE

Chapter One

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

- 1) "A cyclone is coming!"
- 2) "Quick, run into the house and stay there."
- 3) "I must help Uncle Henry!"

2 Say who:

- 1) saw the cyclone first.
- 2) was in the yard when the storm began.
- 3) told Dorothy to run into the house.
- 4) wanted to cry.
- 5) lay down beside the bed.

3 Say who in the story is:

hardworking / brave / ready to help / afraid of the storm / frightened of darkness

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Little Dorothy lived in Kansas City in America.
- 2) She lived with her parents.
- 3) Dorothy was a farmer's niece.
- 4) Uncle Henry knew a lot of things about animals and plants.
- 5) Uncle Henry kept a lot of books about animals in his house.
- 6) Aunt Em helped her husband on the farm.
- 7) Dorothy liked to play with her dog.
- 8) Toto was a big black dog with short hair.
- 9) When the storm began Toto was in the house.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The cyclone carried the house far away.
- 2) Uncle Henry ran off to look after the animals.
- 3) It was very dark in the house.
- 4) Aunt Em ran out of the house to help her husband.
- 5) Suddenly a storm came.
- 6) Dorothy ran into the house with Toto in her arms.
- 7) Dorothy was frightened.
- 8) She decided to go to bed and sleep.
- 9) Dorothy was playing in the yard with Toto.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) How many rooms were there in the farmer's house?
- 2) What animals did Uncle Henry keep on the farm?
- 3) Were there any other houses near the farm?
- 4) Where did the storm come from?
- 5) Where was Uncle Henry when the storm began?
- 6) Where was Dorothy when the storm began?
- 7) Where was Aunt Em when the storm began?
- 8) What did the storm do with the house?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say which of the words is the Odd One Out.

- uncle, aunt, wife, girl, husband
- chair, cupboard, bed, room
- trees, grass, flowers, prairie
- yard, cows, horses, sheep
- blue, grey, dark, green, black

2 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns.

small	late
never	cry
early	big
laugh	slow
quick	get up
lie down	always

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

trees
grass
prairie
early
dear
grey
terrible
frightened
late
suddenly

- 1) Uncle Henry's farm was on the great Kansas _____.
- 2) Near the house there were neither _____ nor _____.
- 3) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em began to work _____ in the morning and stopped _____ in the evening.
- 4) Dorothy was happy because she had a _____ friend.
- 5) One day the sky wasn't blue, it was _____.
- 6) _____ a storm came. It was _____.
- 7) The storm _____ the people on the farm.

4 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- 1) Little Dorothy (live) on a farm.
- 2) She (have) an uncle and an aunt.
- 3) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em (work) all day.
- 4) They (begin) to work early in the morning and (stop) late at night.
- 5) During the day Dorothy (run) and (play) with her dear friend, Toto.
- 6) One afternoon Uncle Henry (look) at the sky. He (not like) it.
- 7) Aunt Em (come) to the door and (look) at the sky too. She (be frightened).
- 8) The cyclone (come) from the East.
- 9) Dorothy (run) into the house.
- 10) The girl (not know) what to do.
- 11) She (think): " I shall go to bed and sleep".

- 12) She (get up), (find) her bed and (lie) down on it.
- 13) Toto (come up) and (lie) down beside the bed.

5 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Uncle Henry ran off *to look after* the cows and horses.
- 2) Aunt Em *looked at* the dark sky.
- 3) Toto had long *hair*.
- 4) Dorothy's *hair* was not long.
- 5) At that moment *a terrible thing* happened.

6 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The storm came _____ the East. It was terrible. It made everything _____ the prairie look dark. Aunt Em was _____ the house. Uncle Henry was _____ the door _____ his house, but Dorothy and their little dog Toto were _____ the yard. When Aunt Em heard her husband's words "A cyclone, Em, a cyclone is coming! How terrible", she quickly ran _____ the house and cried _____ Dorothy: " Quick, Dorothy, run _____ the house and stay there". Then she ran _____ to help Uncle Henry to look after the cows and horses. Dorothy took Toto _____ her arms and ran _____ the house. At that time the cyclone suddenly lifted the little house _____ the air and carried it far away.

 Discussing the Text

1 Explain why:

- 1) there were neither trees nor flowers near the house where Dorothy lived.
- 2) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em never laughed.
- 3) Dorothy was a happy girl.
- 4) Uncle Henry looked at the sky one day.
- 5) Aunt Em was frightened.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the cyclone was very strong.

- 2) Dorothy was frightened.
- 3) the little girl didn't know what was happening.
- 4) Toto loved Dorothy.

3 Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:

- 1) Uncle Henry and Aunt Em.
- 2) your house in the prairie.
- 3) your friend Toto.
- 4) the terrible storm.

4 Read and draw.

- 1) Draw a picture of the little house on the prairie.
- 2) Draw a picture of the only room in the house.
- 3) Draw a portrait of one of the main characters.

5 Role-play.

After the storm Uncle Henry and Aunt Em were very unhappy. They didn't know where Dorothy and Toto were. They asked the Sheriff of Kansas to help them. What do you think the Sheriff's questions were? Act out their conversation.

Chapter Two

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "You are welcome, beautiful Fairy, to the Land of Oz".
- 2) "Why do you call me a Fairy?"
- 3) "You are very kind. But I think there is a mistake".
- 4) "What shall we do now?"

2 Say who:

- 1) came to greet Dorothy.

- 2) could not walk fast.
- 3) killed the Wicked Witch of the East.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

happy / afraid / sorry / frightened / surprised / glad

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Dorothy couldn't sleep at night.
- 2) Toto woke up earlier than Dorothy.
- 3) The people of the Munchkin Country were very small.
- 4) The three men looked young.
- 5) The Munchkins were not free people, they were slaves.
- 6) The Witch of the North was Munchkin's master.
- 7) Dorothy's house killed the Witch of the West.
- 8) All the Witches in the Land of Oz were wicked.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The storm was over.
- 2) The old woman welcomed Dorothy to the Land of Oz.
- 3) Dorothy got up, took Toto and ran to the door.
- 4) Suddenly Dorothy saw some funny people.
- 5) When she opened the door she laughed with joy.
- 6) The Good Witch told Dorothy about the Land of Oz.
- 7) The Good Witch told Dorothy about the Wicked Witch.
- 8) Dorothy learned that the Munchkins became free people.
- 9) The country was very beautiful.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) When did Dorothy wake up?
- 2) Was it light or dark in the house?
- 3) What did Dorothy see outside?
- 4) How many people came up to the house?
- 5) Did Dorothy know who the people were?
- 6) Who spoke first?
- 7) Did Dorothy understand why the little people thanked her?

- 8) What happened to the Witch of the East?
- 9) How many Witches lived in the Land of Oz? What were their names?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 What is the opposite? Match the words in two columns:

light	young
a little way off	open
old	slaves
fast	dark
ask	good
wicked	answer
close	far away
free people	slow

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) The girl sat up in her bed and looked *around*.
- 2) Our people were her *slaves*.
- 3) The Witch *made* all the Munchkin people her slaves.
- 4) The *body* was under the house.
- 5) There were two *wicked* witches in the Land of Oz.

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

South
slaves
silver
fast
free
fairy
friend
feet
joy
old
good

- 1) Dorothy looked at the beautiful flowers and laughed with _____.
- 2) The little woman couldn't walk _____, because she was very _____.
- 3) The Munchkins called Dorothy a _____.
- 4) The people in the Munchkin Country were _____, now they are _____.
- 5) There were two _____ in _____ shoes under the house.
- 6) The Witch of the North was a _____ witch and a _____ of the Munchkin people.
- 7) The second good witch lived in the _____ of the Land of Oz.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

"Now I understand what happened!" cried _____ Dorothy. "The house fell _____ this poor woman and killed her." The girl was frightened. She understood that there was a body _____ the house. She looked and saw two feet _____ silver shoes. "I am so sorry, so sorry _____ her!" "You must not be sorry _____ her! She was the Wicked Witch _____ the East," said the little woman.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.

Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) Oz, of, there, four, in, were, witches, the, Land.
- 2) North, South, the, lived, in, good, the, in, witches, and, the.
- 3) Munchkin, the, woman, little, good, witch, a, and, friend, was, the, a, of, people.
- 4) North, she, the, in, lived.
- 5) Dorothy's, the, they, East, all, were, house, glad, killed, that, the, of, Witch.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Give the second and the third forms of the verbs below:

to speak		
to make		
to run		
to sleep		
to fall		
to sit		
to say		
to sing		
to see		
to wake up		
to get up		
to come up		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "I'm in a fairy-land," thought Dorothy.
- 2) "I'm only a little girl," thought Dorothy.
- 3) "I think they are afraid of me," thought the girl.
- 4) "Why do you call me a fairy?" asked Dorothy.
- 5) "Why do you thank me?" asked Dorothy.
- 6) "You are very kind. But I think there is a mistake," she said.

 **Discussing the Text**

1 Say why:

- 1) Dorothy cried out with joy when she opened the door in the morning.
- 2) Dorothy thought she was in a fairy-land.
- 3) Dorothy thought the people she saw were funny.
- 4) the little people were afraid of Dorothy.

- 5) the Munchkins called Dorothy a Fairy.
- 6) the Witch of the North asked Dorothy not to be sorry.
- 7) the Munchkins were glad that Dorothy's house killed the Witch of the East.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Land of Oz was beautiful.
- 2) the Munchkins looked different from the people on the Kansas prairie.
- 3) the Munchkins were kind people.
- 4) the Munchkins were not afraid of the Witch of the North any more.
- 5) Dorothy didn't know where she really was.

3 Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:

- 1) the land you saw in the morning.
- 2) the three Munchkin men.
- 3) the Good Witch of the North.

4 Read and draw.

- 1) Dorothy saw a lot of beautiful fruit-trees in the new country, didn't she?
What fruit grew in them? Draw a picture of some.
- 2) Dorothy loved the wonderful flowers she saw in the Munchkin Country.
Were they the flowers she knew or did they look unusual to her?
Draw a picture of some.
- 3) Draw a portrait of the Good Witch.

5 Role-play.

- a) Can you imagine what the Munchkins talked about when they saw a house flying in the sky? Work together in small groups and make up talks between them.
- b) Work in pairs and act out the talk between Dorothy and the Good Witch.

Chapter Three

? **Checking Comprehension**

1 **Who said it?**

- 1) "We don't know where Kansas is."
- 2) "You must stay with us."
- 3) "Can you go with me?"
- 4) "There is some magic in these shoes."

2 **Say who:**

- 1) asked for help.
- 2) began to cry.
- 3) told Dorothy the way to the Emerald City.
- 4) took the silver shoes off the Wicked Witch.

3 **Say who in the story is:**

very sad / silent for some time / afraid / in a hurry / very polite

4 **Say true, false, or I don't know.**

- 1) Little Dorothy felt very unhappy.
- 2) She was worried about her Uncle and Aunt.
- 3) The Good Witch consulted a magic book to find Kansas.
- 4) Nobody in the Land of Oz could help Dorothy to get back home.
- 5) The Emerald City was in the South of the Land of Oz.
- 6) The Munchkins wanted to go to the Emerald City too.
- 7) Dorothy wanted to go to the Emerald City alone.
- 8) The Good Witch told Dorothy the magic of the silver shoes.
- 9) The road to the Emerald City was made of yellow brick.
- 10) The Witch turned around Dorothy three times and disappeared.

5 **Put the sentences in the right order.**

- 1) The three old men said good-bye and left.

- 2) The Good Witch gave the silver shoes to Dorothy.
- 3) The Good Witch asked Dorothy about her name.
- 4) Dorothy thought about her Uncle and Aunt.
- 5) The Munchkins said that they couldn't help the girl.
- 6) Dorothy asked for help.
- 7) The Good Witch told Dorothy about the Wizard of the Land of Oz.
- 8) Dorothy was very unhappy and began to cry.
- 9) The Good Witch told Dorothy to walk along the yellow brick road.
- 10) Dorothy took the shoes and put them on.
- 11) The Witch disappeared.

6 **Answer the questions.**

- 1) What did Dorothy ask the Good Witch about?
- 2) Did the Munchkins know where Kansas was?
- 3) Who was the ruler of the Emerald City?
- 4) Was the Wizard good or wicked?
- 5) How far was the Emerald City from the Munchkin Country?
- 6) What did the Good Witch tell Dorothy about the road to the Emerald City?
- 7) Could the Munchkins leave their country?
- 8) Was the Good Witch sorry that she couldn't help Dorothy herself?
- 9) How did the Good Witch disappear?
- 10) Did the three little men walk away without saying a word?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) He lives in the *Emerald City*.
- 2) The Wizard is the *ruler* of the Emerald City.
- 3) There is some *magic* in these shoes.
- 4) The road is made of yellow *brick*.
- 5) The road was long and full of *dangers*.
- 6) The Wizard will help you to *go back* home.
- 7) The Witch said good-bye and *disappeared*.

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

afraid
cry
frightened
help
middle
only
put
speak
thought
took

- 1) Please _____ me to go back to Kansas prairie.
- 2) The little woman didn't _____ for some time.
- 3) Dorothy _____ her Uncle and Aunt were terribly _____.
- 4) The Munchkins looked at Dorothy and began to _____.
- 5) The Emerald City is in the _____ of the Land of Oz.
- 6) There was _____ one road to the Emerald City.
- 7) Dorothy _____ the shoes and _____ them on.
- 8) The Good Witch told the girl not to be _____ of the Wizard of Oz.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Good Witch said that only Oz, the great Wizard _____ the Land _____ Oz, could help Dorothy. The Wizard lived _____ the Emerald City which was _____ the middle _____ the Land _____ Oz. Dorothy wanted to know how to get _____ the Emerald City. The old woman told the girl to walk _____ the yellow brick road. The road was long and full _____ dangers. The Witch was sorry that she couldn't go _____ the girl, but she hoped the great Wizard would help her to get _____ home. The old woman said good-bye _____ the girl, turned _____ and disappeared.

4 Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the events in the story:

beautiful	bricks
magic	grass
great	shoes
wicked	city
little	witch
yellow	country
silver	wizard
green	people
emerald	word

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) Stay, us, must, with, you.
- 2) Must, him, you, find.
- 3) All, walk, must, you, the, there, way.
- 4) On, must, shoes, you, put, silver, the.
- 5) You, now, leave, I, must.
- 6) Road, along, you, that, must, walk.

6 How well do you know the rules of reading?

a) Which of the past tense forms of the verbs below are pronounced with the sound [t] at the end? Underline them.

looked	loved	asked	lived
walked	hoped	turned	helped

b) Find in the story some sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "My uncle and aunt don't know where I am," said Dorothy.
- 2) "They are terribly frightened," thought Dorothy.
- 3) "We don't know where the prairie is," said the Good Witch.
- 4) "What is your name, dear child?" asked the old woman.
- 5) "Where is the city?" asked Dorothy.

- 6) "We cannot go with you," said the little men.
- 7) "I hope you will find the Wizard," said the Good Witch.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) Dorothy asked the old woman to help her.
- 2) Dorothy thought that Uncle Henry and Aunt Em were terribly frightened.
- 3) Dorothy couldn't stay in the Land of Oz.
- 4) the Witch of the North asked Dorothy about her name.
- 5) the Witch of the North told Dorothy about the Emerald City.
- 6) the Witch of the North gave Dorothy the silver shoes.
- 7) the Munchkins couldn't go with Dorothy.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Dorothy loved her Uncle and Aunt and she was missing them.
- 2) the Munchkins were kind people and they were sorry for Dorothy.
- 3) the Good Witch had things to do in the North.
- 4) Dorothy was afraid to go to the Emerald City alone.

3 Imagine that you are the good witch. Speak about:

- 1) the Land of Oz.
- 2) the Wizard of Oz.
- 3) the road to the Emerald City.
- 4) the little girl whose house killed the wicked witch of the East.

4 How well do you know geography?

Neither the Munchkins nor the Good Witch knew where Kansas prairie was. Do you know where Kansas is? Draw a map of America and mark Kansas on it. If necessary, consult a geographical atlas.

5 Role-play.

Work in pairs, read and then act out the talk between Dorothy and the Good Witch.

Chapter Four

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "I am not very well."
- 2) "Please give me your hand!"
- 3) "Don't you know the Great Wizard?"
- 4) "I am not afraid of him."

2 Say who:

- 1) spoke in a friendly way.
- 2) asked for help.
- 3) made a mistake.
- 4) did not like the Scarecrow.

3 Say who in the story is:

very tired / greatly surprised / very sorry / friendly / ready to help / angry

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Little Dorothy got ready for the walk very well.
- 2) She knew well what she wanted to ask the Wizard about.
- 3) Dorothy forgot to put on the magic shoes.
- 4) Dorothy was happy because the weather was fine.
- 5) The road to the Emerald City was very long.
- 6) In the afternoon the girl decided to have a rest.
- 7) Dorothy sat down on the green grass by the road.

- 8) The Scarecrow could think, but he could not speak.
- 9) Dorothy told the Scarecrow about the magic shoes.
- 10) The Scarecrow frightened Toto.
- 11) Dorothy wanted to help the funny straw man.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) Dorothy called Toto.
- 2) The Scarecrow greeted the little girl.
- 3) Dorothy and Toto walked along the yellow brick road.
- 4) The Scarecrow told Dorothy that he would come with her.
- 5) Dorothy took some food from the cupboard.
- 6) The little girl helped the Scarecrow to get down.
- 7) Dorothy, Toto and the Scarecrow walked together to the Emerald City.
- 8) Dorothy told the Scarecrow about the Wizard of the Land of Oz.
- 9) Dorothy decided to get ready for the long walk.
- 10) The Scarecrow told Dorothy his story.
- 11) Dorothy put the silver shoes on.
- 12) Toto did not like the Scarecrow and began to bark at him.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did Dorothy put into a basket?
- 2) What was the weather like that day?
- 3) What did Dorothy see along the road?
- 4) Where did Dorothy see the Scarecrow?
- 5) What was the Scarecrow made of?
- 6) Did the Scarecrow like his life in the field?
- 7) What was the Scarecrow's job?
- 8) Could the Scarecrow get down himself?
- 9) Did the Scarecrow know about the Wizard?
- 10) What did the Scarecrow want to ask the Wizard about?
- 11) What did Toto do when he saw the new companion?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

tired
lighted
middle
cupboard
brains
straw
hoped
piece
mistake

- 1) Dorothy took some bread from the _____.
- 2) The little girl _____ to see her aunt and uncle soon.
- 3) Dorothy was _____ from her long walk.
- 4) Not far from the road in the _____ of the field she saw a scarecrow.
- 5) Its face was a _____ of an old shirt.
- 6) There were no _____ in his head.
- 7) The farmers who made him with _____ made a _____.
- 8) The Scarecrow was afraid only of a _____ match.

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Dorothy put on the shoes and *called* Toto.
- 2) I have no brains and people always *call* me a fool.
- 3) The farmers who *made* me with straw *made* a mistake.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy sat down _____ the green grass _____ the road. Not far _____ the middle _____ the field she saw a scarecrow. Dorothy went _____ to the Scarecrow and stopped. The Scarecrow greeted her _____ a friendly way. "Oh, can you speak?" asked the little girl _____ surprise. "Yes," was the answer and the straw man told Dorothy that he stayed _____ the middle _____ the field to keep the birds _____. But he didn't like to stay there day and night. He wanted to get _____. Dorothy gave him her hand and helped the Scarecrow to get _____.

4 Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the events in the story:

blue	walk
green	sky
straw	grass
painted	man
lighted	comrade
friendly	match
new	way
long	face

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) day, night, like, stay, I, to, here, and, don't.
- 2) come, you, me, you, like, if, may, with.
- 3) began, bark, to, he.
- 4) straw, can't, the, he, bite.
- 5) he, not, was, who, of, afraid, farmer, the, made, him.

6 How well do you know the rules of reading?

a) Which of the past tense forms of the verbs below are pronounced with the sound [d] at the end? Underline them with _____ line.

b) Which of the past tense forms of the verbs below are pronounced with the sound [ɪd] at the end? Underline them with _____ line.

called	hoped	decided	looked
stopped	asked	answered	helped
cried	walked	showed	

c) Find in the story five sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "Can you speak?" Dorothy asked the Scarecrow.
- 2) "Who are you?" asked the Scarecrow.
- 3) "Where are you going?" asked the Scarecrow.

- 4) "Where is the Emerald City?" asked the Scarecrow.
- 5) "Don't you know the Great Wizard?" asked Dorothy.
- 6) "Do you think he can do it?" asked the Scarecrow.
- 7) "What are you afraid of?" asked the little girl.

8 Talk about yourself.

Model: The Scarecrow said:

"You see, *I don't like it when* people call me a fool because I have no brains."

Work in pairs and find out if there is anything you don't like in what others do. Say why.

Start your sentences like this:

- 1) I don't like it when people ... because ...
- 2) I don't like it when my parents ... because ...
- 3) I don't like it when my friends ... because ...
- 4) I don't like it when girls ... because ...
- 5) I don't like it when boys ... because ...



Discussing the Text

1 Say why Dorothy:

- 1) put on the silver shoes.
- 2) went into the little house.
- 3) stopped by the road.
- 4) went up to the Scarecrow.
- 5) gave her hand to the Scarecrow.
- 6) told the Scarecrow about the Wizard and the Emerald City.
- 7) asked the Scarecrow what he was afraid of.

2 Explain why:

- 1) the Scarecrow looked funny.
- 2) the Scarecrow didn't know about the Wizard of Oz.
- 3) people called the straw man a fool.

3 Prove that:

- 1) Dorothy was a practical girl.
- 2) the Scarecrow was happy to get down.
- 3) Dorothy was sorry for the Scarecrow.
- 4) the Scarecrow was not afraid of Toto.

4 Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:

- 1) the funny straw man.
- 2) why the Scarecrow surprised you.
- 3) why you told the Scarecrow about the Emerald City.
- 4) what you told the Scarecrow about the Wizard of Oz.

5 Read and draw.

- 1) Draw a picture of Dorothy and Toto as they started their long walk to the Emerald City. Do you think the silver shoes fitted Dorothy well or they were big for her?
- 2) Draw a picture of the Scarecrow at the moment when he got down and made his first step on the ground.

6 Role-play.

Work in pairs, read and then act out the talk between Dorothy and the Scarecrow.

Chapter Five

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "Where are you going?"
- 2) "I can't be happy if I have no heart."
- 3) "They all run away from me."

2 Say who:

- 1) jumped on the road.
- 2) gave the Lion a blow.
- 3) fell on the ground.
- 4) called the Lion a coward.

3 Say who in the story is:

friendly / very brave/ very sad / very sorry / ready to help

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The Woodman lived in the field.
- 2) He asked Dorothy where she and her friend were going.
- 3) The Scarecrow told the Woodman why they wanted to see the Wizard.
- 4) The Lion lived in a thick forest.
- 5) The Lion attacked Toto first.
- 6) Dorothy wasn't afraid of the Lion.
- 7) Dorothy invited the Woodman and the Lion to go to the Emerald City.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The Lion said he knew he was a coward.
- 2) Dorothy shouted at the beast.
- 3) The Lion was very glad to go to the Emerald City with the friends.
- 4) Suddenly they met a funny man who was made of tin.
- 5) The Lion wanted to bite Toto.
- 6) The Tin Woodman said he had no heart.
- 7) They came to a thick forest.
- 8) The Lion attacked the friends.
- 9) The Lion jumped on the road.
- 10) The Woodman said he wanted to come along with Dorothy.
- 11) Dorothy explained why they were on the way to see the Great Wizard.
- 12) They started for the Emerald City.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) Was the Woodman made of wood?
- 2) What did he have in his right hand?
- 3) What did the Woodman ask Dorothy and the Scarecrow about?
- 4) Did the Woodman have a heart?
- 5) Did Dorothy and her companions see or hear the Lion first?
- 6) Was the Lion big or small?
- 7) Did the Lion have strong paws?
- 8) Was Toto afraid of the Lion?
- 9) What did Dorothy do when the Lion gave a blow to her friends?
- 10) What did the Lion want to ask the Wizard about?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 How well do you know the rules of reading? Read the words.

head	had	heart	heard
her	here	were	there

2 Complete the descriptions. The words from the box can help you.

a)

body
head
heart
arms
legs
hand
woodman

The stranger looked funny: his _____, his _____ and _____ were made of tin. His _____ was made of tin too. In his right _____ he had an axe. He was a _____. He said he had no _____ and couldn't be happy without it.

b)

king
beasts
roar
scared
brave
courage
coward

When the Lion met people or animals he _____ them with a terrible _____. All the other _____ in the forest thought he was very _____. People called the Lion the _____ of the Beasts, but Dorothy called him a _____. The Lion wanted the Wizard to give him some _____.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy and her two companions came _____ a thick forest. Suddenly they heard a terrible roar _____ the forest and a big lion jumped _____ the road. With one blow _____ his paw he sent the Scarecrow _____ the ground. Then he gave a blow _____ the Woodman and the tin man fell _____ the ground and lay there. Toto didn't run _____. He started barking _____ the big beast. Dorothy was not afraid _____ the Lion so she ran _____ the Lion and gave him a blow _____ the nose.

4 Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the characters and events in the story:

tin	woodman
thick	blow
terrible	girl
strong	forest
brave	coward
big	roar

5 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

- 1) Brains, the, head, into, some, to, ask, Scarecrow, will, him, his, put.
- 2) They, a, man, on, way, their, met, strange.
- 3) Cowards, bad, only, be, those, can, small, are, who, to.

6 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

- 1) "Where are you going?" asked the Woodman.
- 2) "Why are you going to the Emerald City?" asked the Woodman.
- 3) "Do you want to come with us to the Emerald City?" asked Dorothy.
- 4) "Do you want to see the Great Wizard of Oz?" Dorothy asked the Lion.

7 **Follow the model and make up sentences about other characters.**

In the story the Lion said:
"I don't want people to know that I am afraid of them."

Model: The *Lion* *didn't want people to know* that he was afraid of them.

Dorothy		people	to call him a fool
The Scarecrow	didn't want		to frighten her friends
The Lion			to run away from him
The little girl		the Lion	to bite Toto

Discussing the Text

1 **Say why:**

- 1) the Woodman looked strange.
- 2) the Tin Woodman decided to go with Dorothy.

- 3) the Lion attacked the three companions.
- 4) the Lion was afraid of people and animals.
- 5) Dorothy invited the Lion to come with her to the Emerald City.

2 **Prove that:**

- 1) the Woodman was friendly.
- 2) Toto was not afraid of the Lion.
- 3) Dorothy was a brave girl.
- 4) the Lion wasn't brave.
- 5) Dorothy wanted to help her new companions.

3 **Do you agree with Dorothy when she says:**

"Only cowards can be bad to those who are small"?

4 **Imagine that you are the Tin Woodman. Speak about:**

- 1) yourself.
- 2) the two people and the dog you met.
- 3) the accident (происшествие) in the forest.
- 4) what you want to ask the Wizard of Oz about and why.

5 **Read and write.**

As Dorothy was walking along the yellow brick road, she thought of what she would tell the Great Wizard about. She wanted to tell him about many things: the terrible storm, the Good Witch of the North and the silver shoes. She also wanted to tell him about herself, Toto and the three new companions she had. There were so many thoughts in her little head! She wished she could write them down. But she had neither paper to write on nor time to stop. Can you do it for her?

6 **Role-play.**

Work in pairs, read and then act out the talks:

- 1) between Dorothy and the Tin Woodman.
- 2) between Dorothy and the Lion.

Chapter Six

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

- 1) "What do you want in the Emerald City?"
- 2) "Why can't he see us?"
- 3) "Does he never go out for a walk?"
- 4) "That is very strange, isn't it?"
- 5) "I don't know where Kansas prairie is."

2 Say who:

- 1) knocked at the gate.
- 2) opened the gate.
- 3) could change his form.
- 4) wore eye-glasses all the time.
- 5) gave a cry of surprise.
- 6) wore green clothes.

3 Say who in the story is:

talkative / surprised / frightened / silent / busy / happy

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The yellow brick road ended at the gate.
- 2) The gate opened very quickly.
- 3) The man at the gate wore green clothes.
- 4) The man at the gate didn't want to know who the visitors were.
- 5) The green box was full of emeralds.
- 6) The green man found a pair of glasses for every visitor.
- 7) Toto didn't like his glasses.
- 8) The people in the Emerald City greeted the visitors.
- 9) The children ran to have a look at the Lion.
- 10) The money in the city was green.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) Little Dorothy and her friends went into the streets of the Emerald City.
- 2) A little man in a green suit opened the gate.
- 3) Everybody got a pair of eye-glasses.
- 4) The little green man asked why the friends wanted to see the Great Wizard.
- 5) Dorothy and her friends came to a great green wall.
- 6) The friends learned a lot of strange things about the Wizard.
- 7) The man locked all the glasses with his key.
- 8) They liked it very much.
- 9) Soon they saw a big wonderful palace.
- 10) Dorothy knocked at the gate.

6 Answer the questions:

- 1) What was the colour of the wall around the Emerald City?
- 2) How many gates were there in the wall?
- 3) Did the man at the gate know what the Great Wizard looked like?
- 4) Was the little green man sure that the Wizard would help all the visitors?
- 5) What did the friends have to put on before coming into the Emerald City?
- 6) What were the houses in the Emerald City made of?
- 7) Were there any animals in the city?
- 8) Were there any people in the city?
- 9) Were there any shops in the city?
- 10) What was sold in the shops?
- 11) Where did the friends see the palace?
- 12) Did Dorothy and her friends like the city?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?

Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[a:]	after	asked	wall	large	glasses
[i:]	speak	green	head	easy	people

2 Complete the descriptions. The words from the box can help you.

beard
bird
eye-glasses
fairy
face
hair
cat
clothes
changed
monkey
order
right

- a) The man at the gate looked strange: his _____, his _____ and _____ were green. His _____ were green too. He said he couldn't let the friends into the city without green _____. That was the _____ of the Great Wizard.
- b) When the Wizard met people he _____ his form. Some people said he looked like a _____ or a _____. Other people said he looked like a _____. And some said he looked like a beautiful _____. But nobody knew what his _____ form was.

3 Match the words in two columns to make word-combinations, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the characters and events in the story:

high	collection
thick	box
large	gate
little	palace
silver	wall
wonderful	key

4 The letters in the words below are jumbled up.

a) Put the letters in the right order and guess the words.

- earths
- rainbs
- rageouc

b) Can you say where the Wizard kept these things?

5 Write down the plural form of the words below:

child	
box	
man	
city	
woman	
fairy	

6 Fill in the missing articles.

After ___ long walk Dorothy and her friends came to ___ great green wall. ___ wall was high and thick and it went around ___ Emerald City. There was ___ gate in ___ wall. Dorothy knocked at ___ gate. When ___ gate opened they saw ___ little man in ___ green suit. Near him there was ___ large green box. When ___ man found out why Dorothy and her companions wanted to see ___ Wizard, he said he was not sure if ___ Great Wizard would see them. He said that ___ Wizard never left ___ palace. He sat in ___ Great Throne Room and never went out for ___ walk.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "He sees no men, women or children," answered the little green man.
- 2) "I want him to give me some brains," said the Scarecrow.
- 3) "I want him to give me a heart," said the Tin Woodman.

- 4) "I want him to give me some courage," said the Cowardly Lion.
- 5) "I don't know where Kansas prairie is. But I hope the Great Wizard will find it for you," said the little man.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why the little man in a green suit:

- 1) looked strange.
- 2) wasn't sure if the Wizard would see the four visitors.
- 3) said that the Wizard was terrible.
- 4) asked the friends to put on the eye-glasses.
- 5) locked the glasses at the back of their heads with a little

2 Prove that:

- 1) it was not easy to get into the Emerald City.
- 2) the little green man followed the rules of the country.
- 3) the people of the Emerald City were surprised to see the visitors.
- 4) the children of the Emerald City were afraid of the Lion and the dog.
- 5) Dorothy and her friends thought the city was wonderful.

3 Imagine that you are the little green man. Speak about:

- 1) the life in the the Emerald City.
- 2) the rules of the Emerald City.
- 3) the Great Wizard.

4 Role-play.

a) Work in groups of three, make up little conversations between:

- 1) the little green man, Dorothy and the Scarecrow.
- 2) Dorothy, the Tin Woodman and the little green man.
- 3) Dorothy, the Lion and the little green man.

b) Work in pairs and make up a conversation between a salesman in a shop and a little boy.

The boy comes to the shop to buy some sweets and nuts. He has just seen an unusual group of people in town and is giving the news to the salesman. When the salesman looks out of the window he sees the strangers himself!

c) Work in pairs and make up a conversation between a mother and her little daughter.

The mother is at home making a new dress for her daughter, when the little girl runs into the house very frightened. The mother asks her what the matter is and finds out that the child has just seen some terrible beasts in the street. She doesn't know what they are.

When you are ready, role-play your conversations in front of the class.

Chapter Seven

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "I have never seen him."
- 2) "That is very kind of the Great Wizard."
- 3) "You must help me first."
- 4) "But I cannot do it."
- 5) "Remember - she is very, very wicked."

2 Say who:

- 1) informed the Wizard of the visitors.
- 2) waited for a long time.
- 3) went to see the Wizard first.
- 4) looked at silver shoes with interest.
- 5) asked for help.

3 Say who in the story is:

full of hope / helpful / terribly frightened / unkind / very unhappy / very sorry

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) That day the Wizard was in the Throne Room.
- 2) The Green Soldier asked the friends to wait.
- 3) The Green Soldier informed the Wizard of the visitors.
- 4) The Great Wizard asked the soldier a lot of questions.
- 5) Dorothy and her friends didn't wait long for the soldier to come back.
- 6) The soldier brought good news.
- 7) Oz wanted to see all the friends together.
- 8) Each of the friends had his room in the palace.
- 9) When the bell rang the soldier came up to Dorothy.
- 10) The Wizard looked at Dorothy's shoes with interest.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The Wizard said that Dorothy was strong.
- 2) The Wizard wanted to see each of the friends alone.
- 3) When she saw the Wizard she was frightened.
- 4) Dorothy thought she could never do what the Wizard wanted.
- 5) The Big Head looked at Dorothy and spoke.
- 6) Dorothy took courage and answered.
- 7) The Big Head studied the girl's shoes.
- 8) Dorothy went to see the Wizard first.
- 9) Dorothy protested and asked for help again.
- 10) The Wizard gave a task to the girl.
- 11) Then she went to her room and cried.
- 12) She went to her friends and repeated the words of the Wizard.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) Was the soldier at the palace door helpful?
- 2) What did he do?
- 3) Did the Green Soldier see the Wizard?

- 4) How did he talk to the Wizard?
- 5) Did the Wizard agree to see the friends?
- 6) How did Dorothy know that it was time to go to the Throne Room?
- 7) What shape was the Throne Room?
- 8) What did Dorothy see in the Throne Room?
- 9) Did the Big Head look friendly?
- 10) Did the Wizard know that Dorothy had the magic shoes on?
- 11) What task did the Wizard give Dorothy?
- 12) Was the girl happy to fulfil it?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?

Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[a:]	glasses	arms	after	want	last	aunt
[i:]	East	people	head	screen	between	
[ou]	alone	throne	only	some	open	home

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

saw
waited
opened
rang
spoke
repeated
opened
closed
asked
help
send
came

- 1) Dorothy and her friends _____ for a long time.
- 2) The Green Soldier _____ to the Wizard through a screen.

- 3) Suddenly a bell _____ and a green girl _____ up to Dorothy.
- 4) Dorothy _____ a throne in the room.
- 5) The mouth _____ and said: "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible."
- 6) The eyes of the Head _____ and _____ three times.
- 7) Dorothy _____ the Wizard to _____ her back home.
- 8) The Wizard asked the girl to _____ him first.
- 9) Dorothy _____ the words of the Wizard to her friends.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

There was a soldier _____ the palace door. The little man said _____ the soldier that the visitors wanted to come _____. The soldier invited the visitors _____ the waiting room and went _____ the Throne room. He spoke _____ the Wizard _____ the screen which was _____ them. The Wizard was _____ it. He said that he would see the visitors and decide what he could do _____ them. Each of the visitors should come _____ his room alone.

4 Match the words with opposite meanings, then use them in sentences of your own to describe the characters and events in the story:

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| long | terrible |
| round | rich |
| wonderful | wicked |
| poor | small |
| great | short |
| kind | weak |
| strong | square |

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) Palace, will, at, for, days, stay, you, some, the.
- 2) Head, of, the, eyes, her, looked, at, a, for, minute.
- 3) I, aunt, know, where, unhappy, doesn't, because, that, my, is, she, know, am, I.

6 How many irregular verbs can you find in the box in Exercise 2? Write them out in the infinitive and give their second and third forms.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "These people want to see the Wizard," said the little man.
- 2) "I have never seen him," answered the soldier.
- 3) "That is the signal," said the green girl.
- 4) "I want to go home," said Dorothy.
- 5) "What do you want of me?" asked the Head.
- 6) "I want you to send me back to Kansas," answered Dorothy.

8 Follow the model and make up sentences about other characters.

Model: Dorothy wanted the Wizard to send her back home.

Dorothy		the Wizard	to ...
The Scarecrow			to ...
The Lion	wanted		to ...
The Tin Woodman		Dorothy	to ...
The Wizard			to ...

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) the Green Soldier spoke to the Wizard through the screen.
- 2) the Wizard wanted the visitors to stay at the Palace for some days.
- 3) Dorothy was frightened when she saw the Wizard.
- 4) Dorothy didn't want to stay in the Land of Oz.
- 5) the Wizard looked at Dorothy's shoes.
- 6) the Wizard thought Dorothy was strong.
- 7) the Wizard gave a task to Dorothy.
- 8) the friends were sorry for Dorothy.

2 Prove that:

- 1) nobody has ever seen the Wizard.
- 2) the Wizard could really change his form.
- 3) Dorothy was a brave girl.
- 4) the Wizard knew about the magic of the silver shoes.
- 5) the Witch of the West was wicked.
- 6) Dorothy has lost hope to get home soon.

3 Imagine that you are Dorothy. Speak about:

- 1) the Palace and the people that you saw in it.
- 2) the Wizard as you saw him.
- 3) what you asked the Wizard about.
- 4) the task that the Wizard gave you.

4 Read and write.

After the visit to the Wizard Dorothy went back to the room where her friends were. She didn't look happy and she said: "There is no hope for me." What do you think her friends asked her about? Make a list of six questions, write them down. You may use them in the role-play (Exercise 6, b.)

5 What is your opinion?

- 1) Do you think the Wizard did it right when he asked Dorothy to help him first?
Do you remember what exactly he said?
- 2) What would you think of your friend if he / she said:
"You ask me to help you. And what will you do for me?"
- 3) Dorothy loved the Land of Oz. She thought it was very beautiful. But she wanted to go home. What makes home?
- 4) Do you agree with the saying "East or West, home is best"?

6 Role-play.

a) Work in pairs, read and then act out the talks:

- 1) between Dorothy and the Green Soldier;
- 2) between the Wizard and Dorothy.

b) Work in groups of four and role-play the following scene:

The Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion are worried about Dorothy. It has been a long time since she went to see the Wizard. They got into one room. Dorothy comes in. She looks very unhappy. The friends understand that something wrong has happened and ask her some questions. They feel sorry for poor Dorothy, but they don't know what to do.

Chapter Eight

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "I don't want to be a fool."
- 2) "How can I help you?"
- 3) "It's all the same to me..."
- 4) "Did you see the Big Head?"
- 5) "What must I do?"
- 6) "Tomorrow I shall go to see the Wizard."

2 Say who:

- 1) took the Scarecrow to the Wizard.
- 2) greeted the Scarecrow.
- 3) met the Tin Woodman in the throne room.
- 4) wanted to frighten the Wizard.

3 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The Green Soldier came for the Scarecrow in the morning.
- 2) The Scarecrow spoke first.
- 3) The Scarecrow thought the Wizard had a lot of brains.
- 4) The Wizard thought the Scarecrow was very strong.
- 5) The Wizard gave a new task to the Scarecrow.
- 6) The Scarecrow didn't understand the Wizard's task.

- 7) The same morning the Green Soldier came for the Woodman.
- 8) The Woodman was not afraid of the Beast.

4 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The Cowardly Lion wanted to help his friends.
- 2) The Wizard gave a task to the Scarecrow.
- 3) The Tin Woodman went back to his friends.
- 4) The Scarecrow came into the Great Throne Room.
- 5) The Tin Woodman asked the Wizard to give him a heart.
- 6) The Scarecrow asked the Wizard to give him some brains.
- 7) The Woodman told the Beast that he had no heart.
- 8) The friends were very sorry for the Scarecrow.
- 9) The Tin Woodman saw a Terrible Beast on the Throne.
- 10) The Wizard told the Woodman to help Dorothy.

5 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did the Beautiful Girl look like?
- 2) What did the Wizard want the Scarecrow to do?
- 3) Did the Wizard promise to help the Scarecrow?
- 4) What did the Beast look like?
- 5) How many eyes did the Beast have?
- 6) What did the Wizard want the Woodman to do?
- 7) What did the Wizard promise to give to the Woodman?
- 8) Did the friends discuss the results of their visits to the Wizard?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 How well do you know the rules of reading?
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?**

- | | | | | | | |
|------|-------|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------------|
| [a:] | asked | last | heart | are | made | aunt |
| [i:] | beast | repeat | great | green | please | |
| [au] | down | loud | coward | because | about | |
| [ɔ:] | all | form | straw | wall | shall | roar morning |

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

emerald
clever
real
green
beautiful
long
big
great
terrible
poor
strong

- 1) When the Scarecrow came into the room, he saw a _____ Girl on the _____ throne.
- 2) Her hair was _____ and _____.
- 3) She looked at the Scarecrow and said: "I am Oz, the _____ and _____."
- 4) The Scarecrow thought the Wizard was very _____, because he had a lot of brains.
- 5) The Beast was very _____ and looked very _____.
- 6) The Tin Woodman wanted to be a _____ man.
- 7) The friends were sorry for the _____ Woodman.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

When the Tin Woodman came _____ the Great Throne Room, he saw a Terrible Beast _____ the throne. The Beast looked _____ the Woodman and said a _____ loud voice: "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible." The Woodman was not afraid _____ the Beast, because there was no heart _____ his body. He was not a real man, he was made _____ tin. He came to the Wizard to ask him _____ a heart. The Wizard listened _____ the Woodman and said that he would give him a heart, but first he wanted the Woodman to help Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch _____ the West. So the Tin Woodman went _____ his friends. They were very sorry _____ the poor Woodman.

- 4 Check your pronunciation of past tense regular verbs. As you know the *-ed* ending can be pronounced in three different ways: [d], [t], [ɪd]. Sort out the verbs in the box below into three columns.

[d]	[t]	[ɪd]

<p>looked helped killed asked repeated wanted frightened jumped pushed</p>
--

- 5 Fill in the missing forms of the irregular verbs in the box below, then find some sentences with these verbs in the chapter:

take		taken
come	came	
	saw	
say		said
make	made	
	told	
		given

- 6 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "I am Oz, the Great and Terrible. Who are you, and what do you want of me?" said the Beautiful Girl on the throne.
- 2) "Please put some brains into my head," the Scarecrow asked the Beautiful Girl.
- 3) "Please give me a heart," the Woodman asked the Beast. "Help Dorothy to kill the Wicked Witch," Oz gave a task to the Woodman.

- 7 Follow the model and make up other sentences.

Model: It's all the same to the Wizard who kills the witch.

		Dorothy		helps the friends
It's all the same	to	the Scarecrow	who	brings good news
		the Woodman		gives him brains
		Toto		changes his life
		the Lion		plays with him



Discussing the Text

- 1 Say why:

- 1) the Green Soldier came twice to the friends' room.
- 2) Dorothy was sure that the Scarecrow saw the Big Head.
- 3) the Wizard changed his form.
- 4) the Wizard thought the Scarecrow was strong.
- 5) the Wizard gave the same task to the friends.
- 6) the friends were sorry for the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman.

- 2 Prove that:

- 1) the Wizard didn't like the Witch of the West.
- 2) the Wizard couldn't kill the Wicked Witch himself.

Chapter Nine

- 3) it was all the same for the Wizard who would kill the Witch.
- 4) it was more important for the Wizard to hear that the Wicked Witch was killed than to help the friends.

3 What did the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman say?

On behalf of one of the main characters speak about:

- 1) the Wizard as you saw him.
- 2) the help you wanted to get from the Wizard.
- 3) the task that the Wizard gave you.
- 4) what you thought of the task.

4 What is your opinion?

- 1) The Woodman said: "I want to become a real man." What did he mean by that?
- 2) Do you think the Wizard understood that the Scarecrow and the Tin Woodman were Dorothy's friends?
- 3) Why did the Wizard give the same task to the friends?
- 4) Was the Wizard's task dangerous?
- 5) The Cowardly Lion said that he would roar and frighten the Wizard no matter what his form was. Why did the Lion want to frighten the Wizard?

5 Role-play.

a) Work in pairs, read and then act out the following talks:

- 1) between the Scarecrow and the Wizard;
- 2) between the Tin Woodman and the Wizard.

b) Work with a partner and role-play the following scene:

The Green Soldier knew what was happening in the Palace very well, because every morning he took one of the friends to see the Wizard. He also knew how little luck each of them had. Imagine that it is already the end of the third day. Suddenly on his way home the soldier meets the little man in the green suit. They stop to have a little chat.

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "There is only one thing we can do".
- 2) "But can we do it?"
- 3) "I don't like strangers in my country".

2 Say who:

- 1) went to see the Wizard last.
- 2) opened the gate for the friends.
- 3) did much harm to people.
- 4) had lots of slaves.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

upset / angry / frightened / tired / wicked / full of anger / strong

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The Lion went up very near to the Ball of Fire.
- 2) The Wizard spoke in a very loud voice.
- 3) The Lion was afraid of the Ball of Fire.
- 4) The Lion believed that the Wizard could help him.
- 5) The three friends didn't know what to do.
- 6) The Lion thought there was only one way out.
- 7) Dorothy was frightened.
- 8) All the friends agreed that they should go to the West.
- 9) The Wicked Witch of the West had a telescope.
- 10) The Wicked Witch ordered to kill all the strangers.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The friends thanked the Green Soldier.
- 2) The slaves dropped the poor Woodman on the ground.

- 3) The friends decided to go to the West.
- 4) The monkeys brought Dorothy and the Lion to the Witch.
- 5) They walked for a long time and decided to have a rest.
- 6) They left the Emerald City and started to walk to the West.
- 7) The Witch ordered her slaves to kill the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow.
- 8) They pulled all the straw out of the Scarecrow's body.
- 9) They were so tired that they fell asleep.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did the Lion see on the throne?
- 2) What did the Lion see in front of the throne?
- 3) Was the Ball of Fire very bright?
- 4) What did the Wizard say?
- 5) What did the Lion ask the Wizard for?
- 6) Did the Wizard give some courage to the Lion?
- 7) What did the Wizard ask the Lion to do?
- 8) Was the Lion unhappy?
- 9) When did the friends leave the Emerald City?
- 10) Who saw them off?
- 11) Did the friends know the way to the land of the Wicked Witch?
- 12) Where did the Wicked Witch of the West live?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 What is the opposite?

Fill in the boxes in the second column with matching words:

free people	
a little way off	
kind	
terrible	
strangers	

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

courage
bright
people
far
voice
beasts
harm
telescope
wicked

- 1) The Ball of Fire was so _____ that the Lion couldn't look at it.
- 2) Then a _____ came from the Ball of Fire.
- 3) The Lion asked the Wizard for some _____ because he was afraid of _____ and _____.
- 4) The witch was very _____ and she did much _____ to people.
- 5) The witch could see very _____ with her only eye which was like a _____.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) *Fly to* those people.
- 2) The Monkeys *flew to* Dorothy and her friends.
- 3) Some of them took the Tin Woodman and *flew up* into the air.
- 4) Two monkeys took Dorothy and Toto and *flew* with them to the palace.
- 5) The monkeys *lifted* the Lion up into the air.
- 6) The monkeys *flew away* with the Lion.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Witch ordered her slaves to come _____ her. She told them to fly _____ the strangers and kill two _____ them. She wanted the monkeys to bring the little girl and the Lion _____ her house, because she wanted them to work _____ her. The monkeys flew _____ Dorothy and her friends. Some _____ the

monkeys took the Tin Woodman and flew _____ the air. They dropped the poor Woodman _____ the ground and broke his arms and legs. Other monkeys pulled all the straw _____ the Scarecrow's body and his head. Then they flew _____ the air and dropped him _____ a tall tree.

5 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

- 1) Wizard's, the, Lion, the, back, his, words, went, repeated, to, friends, and.
- 2) The, ordered, slaves, witch, her, come, to, her, to.
- 3) The, strangers, flew, to, the, monkeys, brought, the, and, away, palace.

6 **How well do you know irregular verbs?**

a) Give the second and the third forms of the verbs below:

to give		
to go		
to take		
to see		
to fly		
to fall		
to come		
to find		
to bring		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

- 1) "There is only one thing we can do," said the Lion.

- 2) "I shall go with you," said the Scarecrow.
- 3) "There are strangers in my country!" cried the Witch.
- 4) "I don't like strangers in my country," said the Witch.

Discussing the Text

1 **Say why:**

- 1) the Wizard changed his form again.
- 2) the Lion didn't jump at the Ball of Fire.
- 3) the Wizard gave the same task to the Lion.
- 4) the Lion was angry.
- 5) Dorothy changed her mind.
- 6) the friends didn't see the monkeys.
- 7) the Witch ordered to kill the Woodman and the Scarecrow.
- 8) the Witch ordered to bring Dorothy and the Lion to her.

2 **Prove that:**

- 1) the Lion changed his mind when he came into the Throne Room.
- 2) the friends believed that the Wizard would fulfil their wishes.
- 3) it wasn't easy for Dorothy to agree to the Lion's words.
- 4) the Wicked Witch of the West looked strange.
- 5) the Witch was very angry and aggressive.
- 6) the monkey-slaves looked unusual and were very strong.

3 **On behalf of the Lion speak about:**

- 1) the Wizard as you saw him.
- 2) the help you wanted to get from the Wizard.
- 3) the task that the Wizard gave you.
- 4) what you thought of the task.
- 5) what you thought the friends should do.
- 6) the Wicked Witch of the West and her slaves.

4 **Read and draw.**

- 1) Draw a picture of the Wicked Witch of the West.

- 2) When Dorothy was in the Munchkin Country she loved the countryside there.
What do you think she saw around in the country where the Witch of the West was the ruler?
- 3) Draw a picture of some monkey-slaves. Did they all look the same or different?

5 Role-play.

- a) Work in pairs and act out the talk between the Cowardly Lion and the Wizard.
- b) Work together in small groups and act out the talk between Dorothy and her friends when they take the decision to go to the West and fulfil the Wizard's task.

Chapter Ten

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "I shall give you some work to do".
- 2) "Shall we ever see them again?"
- 3) "It is not your shoe, it is my shoe now!"
- 4) "What are you doing?"

2 Say who:

- 1) brought Dorothy to the palace.
- 2) knew about the magic of the shoes.
- 3) worked hard.
- 4) gave the Lion food.
- 5) often cried.
- 6) took a bath in the evening.
- 7) gave a loud cry.
- 8) melted like sugar.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

frightened / afraid of the dark/ afraid of water/ hungry / angry / surprised / happy

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) When the Witch saw Dorothy she was frightened.
- 2) When Dorothy saw the Witch she felt sorry for her.
- 3) The Witch understood that Dorothy knew nothing about the magic of the shoes.
- 4) The Witch wanted to get the shoes very much.
- 5) Dorothy wore the shoes all the time.
- 6) The Witch gave much work to Dorothy.
- 7) Dorothy worked long hours.
- 8) The Lion lived in the palace.
- 9) The Witch didn't give any food to the Lion.
- 10) Every morning Dorothy took a bath.
- 11) The Witch took one of the silver shoes when Dorothy was taking a bath.
- 12) When Dorothy threw a bucket of water at the Witch, the Witch grew larger.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) Dorothy became very angry.
- 2) Dorothy ran to tell the good news to the Lion.
- 3) The Witch took the silver shoe and put it on.
- 4) The witch fell on the floor and became a brown dirty mass.
- 5) Once Dorothy ran against a bucket of water and fell down.
- 6) Dorothy took another bucket of water and threw it on the dirty mass.
- 7) One silver shoe fell off her foot.
- 8) Then she saw her silver shoe again.
- 9) The Witch ordered Dorothy to clean the kitchen.
- 10) Dorothy quickly put the shoe on her foot.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) How did the Witch understand that Dorothy knew nothing about the magic of the shoes?

- 2) What did the Witch order the little girl to do?
- 3) What did the Witch promise to do with the little girl if she didn't work very well?
- 4) Was Dorothy afraid of the Witch?
- 5) How long did Dorothy stay in the Witch's palace?
- 6) Where did Dorothy take food for the Lion?
- 7) Did the Lion work for the Witch?
- 8) Did Dorothy think about her friends?
- 9) Did Dorothy take her shoes off during the day?
- 10) Did Dorothy know that the Witch was afraid of water?

- 1) The Witch made Dorothy her _____ .
- 2) The poor girl was so frightened that she _____ to work for the Witch.
- 3) The Lion didn't get any _____ from the Witch _____ he didn't want to work for her.
- 4) The witch didn't go to Dorothy's room because she was _____ of water.
- 5) Dorothy ran against a _____ of water in the _____ .
- 6) The Witch first became smaller and then _____ like _____ .
- 7) Dorothy looked at the floor and saw only some _____ mass.

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 What is the opposite?

Fill in the boxes in the second column with matching words:

take away	
clean	
slave	
forget	
beginning	

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

afraid
 agreed
 because
 bucket
 dirty
 food
 melted
 kitchen
 slave
 sugar

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Dorothy often *cried*.
- 2) She *cried* to the witch: "Give me back my shoe!"
- 3) At once the wicked woman *gave a loud cry*.
- 4) "Don't you see I am melting," *cried* the Witch.
- 5) She *picked up* the bucket.
- 6) She took another bucket of water and *threw* it at the mass.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Witch ordered Dorothy to work _____ the kitchen _____ the palace. She ordered her to work well or she promised to make an end _____ her. For many days Dorothy worked hard _____ morning _____ night. _____ work Dorothy went _____ her room. She often cried. When she cried Toto sat _____ her feet and looked _____ her face. Neither Dorothy nor Toto could forget their friends. They were very sorry _____ them. Once Dorothy ran _____ a bucket _____ water _____ the kitchen. She fell _____ and one _____ her silver shoes came _____ .

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) Witch, wanted, much, to, silver, were, on, feet, Wicked, the, very, get, the, shoes, which, Dorothy's.

- 2) Dorothy, up, the, water, picked, and, bucket, threw, of, it, the, Witch, at.
- 3) Witch, brown, the, became, fell, to, the, mass, floor, and, a, dirty.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Give the second and the third forms of the verbs below:

to bring		
to take		
to get		
to understand		
to begin		
to fall		
to know		
to forget		
to give		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "I don't want to work for the Witch," said the Lion.
- 2) "I shall not give you the shoe," cried out the Witch.
- 3) "Some day I shall have the other shoe too!" said the Witch.
- 4) "What are you doing?" the Witch asked Dorothy.

 **Discussing the Text**

1 Say why:

- 1) the Witch wanted to get the silver shoes.

- 2) the Witch made Dorothy her slave.
- 3) the Witch told Dorothy about the Tin Woodman and the Scarecrow.
- 4) the Witch gave no food to the Lion.
- 5) Dorothy often cried.
- 6) it was difficult for the Witch to get hold of the shoes.
- 7) Dorothy became angry when the Witch took her shoe.
- 8) the Witch became smaller.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Witch was afraid of the dark.
- 2) the Witch was afraid of water.
- 3) The Lion was not afraid of the Witch.
- 4) Dorothy threw the water at the Witch in anger.
- 5) the Witch knew her end was near.

3 Look at the sentences in "Who said it" Exercise 1 and describe the situations in which they were said.

4 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

- 1) your life in the palace.
- 2) your friend the Lion and how you tried to help him.
- 3) the day the Witch melted and how it happened.

5 Role-play.

- a) Every time Dorothy went to see the Lion she brought him some food. The Lion asked Dorothy about her life in the palace. Sometimes they discussed plans of getting away from the Wicked Witch, but Dorothy was frightened. Work in pairs and act out the talk between Dorothy and the Lion.
- b) More than once the Witch tried to get hold of the magic shoes. And at last she has one of them on her foot! But what is it? The girl doesn't look frightened at all. Her voice is angry and she wants the Witch to give the silver shoe back to her. Work in pairs and act out the final talk between Dorothy and the Witch.

Chapter Eleven

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

- 1) "First of all we must find our friends".
- 2) "Where are you, Great Wizard?"
- 3) "What happened to the Wicked Witch of the West?"
- 4) "You had a lot of time to think it over."
- 5) "We don't want to wait, you must do it at once."

2 Say who:

- 1) helped Dorothy to find her comrades.
- 2) repaired the Tin Woodman.
- 3) greeted the friends in the Throne Room.
- 4) made a lot of promises.
- 5) didn't want to wait.
- 6) wanted to frighten the Wizard.
- 7) frightened Toto.
- 8) ran away.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

busy / glad to help / very happy / grateful / full of hope

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Dorothy wanted to find her friends as soon as possible.
- 2) The monkeys were ready to help.
- 3) The monkeys were glad that there was no Witch of the West any more.
- 4) It was difficult to repair the Tin Woodman.
- 5) It wasn't easy to find the Scarecrow.
- 6) A lot of smiths worked to repair the Scarecrow.
- 7) The Scarecrow thanked his friends.
- 8) The monkeys took the friends to the Emerald City very quickly.
- 9) The friends were very happy to be back to the Emerald City.

- 10) The friends were surprised to see no Wizard in the Throne Room.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) At this moment the Lion roared and Toto ran away.
- 2) They decided to go back to the Emerald City as soon as possible.
- 3) They looked everywhere but they didn't see anybody.
- 4) The Wizard said he needed time to think.
- 5) The friends came into the Throne Room.
- 6) They waited and waited.
- 7) The friends didn't want to wait.
- 8) At last they heard the Voice of the Wizard.
- 9) Dorothy told the Wizard that there was no Witch of the West any longer.
- 10) The friends were together again.

6 Answer the questions:

- 1) Did the monkeys remember the place where they dropped the Tin Woodman?
- 2) Could the Woodman walk when the monkeys found him?
- 3) How long did the smiths work on the Woodman?
- 4) How did the friends repair the Scarecrow?
- 5) How soon did the friends get back to the Emerald City?
- 6) Did they meet the Green Soldier at the City gate?
- 7) What form did the Wizard take this time?
- 8) Did the Wizard remember about his promise?
- 9) What did the Wizard want to know first?
- 10) Did the Wizard want to fulfil his promises at once?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Match the words and phrases in the columns:

first of all
to lose
to repair
fall down
in the centre

to find
to break
at last
in the corner
get up

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

body wings arms legs smiths screen corner clean tall
--

- 1) Dorothy asked the monkeys with _____ to help her.
- 2) Many _____ worked for three days and four nights on his _____ and _____.
- 3) At the end of the day they saw a _____ tree, and the Scarecrow in it.
- 4) They put nice _____ straw into the Scarecrow's _____.
- 5) They looked in every _____ of the Throne Room, but didn't see anybody.
- 6) The little dog ran against the _____ that stood in the corner.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) The Tin Woodman began *to cut* the tree.
- 2) "Oh, let us *start for* the Emerald City at once!"
- 3) "You had a lot of time *to think it over*."

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

- 1) The Tin Woodman was happy because he was _____ dear friends.
- 2) The friends lifted the Scarecrow _____ and carried him _____ to the palace.
- 3) When they put new straw _____ his body, the Scarecrow jumped _____ his feet _____ once.
- 4) The Wizard was _____ the Throne Room but the friends couldn't see him.

- 5) The Witch melted when Dorothy threw a bucket _____ water _____ her.
- 6) The Wizard said he needed time to think everything _____.
- 7) The dog ran _____ the screen that stood _____ the corner, and the screen fell _____.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) Woodman, the, monkeys, Tin, brought, the, the, palace, to.
- 2) Dorothy, wanted, once, City, at, to, go, to, the, Emerald.
- 3) Many, the, walls, friends, passed, before, green, days, of, our, saw, the, city.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

	found	
to let		
		flown
	could	
		seen
to cut		
	fell	
		thrown

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "Where are you, Great Wizard?" asked Dorothy.
- 2) "I am here but you can't see me," said the Voice.

3) "We don't want to wait," cried the friends.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) Dorothy decided to find her friends first.
- 2) the monkeys were glad to help.
- 3) the smiths worked very long on the Woodman.
- 4) the Woodman cut down a tall tree.
- 5) the friends wanted to go back to the Emerald City.
- 6) the friends had to wait for a long time.
- 7) the Wizard didn't take any form this time.
- 8) the Wizard wanted to hear the news about the Wicked Witch.
- 9) the Lion wanted to frighten the Wizard.
- 10) the Wizard wanted to have more time to think everything over.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Dorothy was a good friend.
- 2) the monkeys were not wicked.
- 3) the Tin Woodman was very helpful.
- 4) the Wizard didn't remember his promise.
- 5) the Wizard remembered his task well.
- 6) all the friends didn't want to wait for another day.

3 Look at the sentences in "Who said it" Exercise 1 and describe the situations in which they were said in more detail.

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

- 1) how the Tin Woodman was repaired.
- 2) how the Scarecrow was repaired.
- 3) what you thought of on the way back to the Emerald City.
- 4) how you got into the palace this time.
- 5) the meeting with the Wizard.

5 What is your opinion?

The author gave this chapter the name: "A friend in need is a friend indeed." Was he right? Did Dorothy and her friends prove to be real friends?

6 Role-play.

Working with some of your classmates, read the conversation between the four friends and the Wizard. Then act it out in class.

Chapter Twelve

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "I saw Oz in the form of a Great Head."
- 2) "I saw Oz in the form of a Beautiful Girl."
- 3) "I saw Oz in the form of a Terrible Beast."
- 4) "I saw Oz in the form of a Ball of Fire."
- 5) "I fooled you all the time."
- 6) "You are a humbug."

2 Say who:

- 1) stood behind the screen.
- 2) didn't know what to say.
- 3) fooled all the people of the Land of Oz.
- 4) knew a lot of tricks.
- 5) showed some tricks to the old man for the first time.
- 6) called the poor old man the Wizard first.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

terribly frightened / greatly surprised / awfully wrong / worried

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The little old man spoke in a loud voice.
- 2) The friends were greatly surprised to see the little old man.
- 3) The little old man had a great secret.
- 4) The old man was a humbug.
- 5) Some people in the country knew his secret.
- 6) The Witch of the West knew the Wizard's secret.
- 7) The man showed the friends how he made his tricks.
- 8) Dorothy asked the man to tell them his story.
- 9) The man used to work in a circus.
- 10) He made balloons himself.
- 11) One windy day the man went up in his balloon.
- 12) When the man came to a strange country he told the people in that land that he was a Wizard.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) A lot of people came to greet him.
- 2) The man began to work in the circus.
- 3) The people called the man a Wizard.
- 4) He became a balloonist.
- 5) The man used to live in a small town near Kansas.
- 6) Once a man from a circus showed him some interesting tricks.
- 7) The little man from Kansas prairie became a terrible Wizard.
- 8) He often went high up in the sky in his balloon and made tricks.
- 9) Many people saw his balloon and came to buy tickets to the circus.
- 10) One evening a strong wind carried the balloon far away.
- 11) When the balloon came down the Kansas man saw a strange, but beautiful country.
- 12) Many people saw his balloon and came to buy tickets to the circus.
- 13) The man didn't tell them that it was a mistake.

6 Answer the questions:

- 1) What did the little man ask the friends about?
- 2) Did he really think that the friends could kill him?

- 3) Were the friends happy to learn that the man wasn't a Wizard?
- 4) What were the friends worried about most of all?
- 5) What did the Wizard think about their worries?
- 6) How did the old man change his form as a Wizard?
- 7) What did the Wizard keep in a small room behind the Throne Room?
- 8) What did the Wizard make the Great Head of?
- 9) How did the Wizard become a Terrible Beast?
- 10) Was it difficult for him to take the form of the Ball of Fire?
- 11) Where did the old man come from?
- 12) How did he learn to make tricks?
- 13) What did he do in the circus?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

paper kill cotton corner secret surprise skins thread burned fooled
--

- 1) The little man asked not to _____ him.
- 2) The friends looked at him in great _____.
- 3) Nobody in the country knew the Wizard's _____.
- 4) For many years Oz _____ all the people in the country.
- 5) In the _____ of the room they saw the Great Head. It was made of _____.
- 6) When the Wizard pulled a _____ the Great Head opened and closed its eyes.
- 7) The Terrible Beast was made of lot of _____.
- 8) The Ball of Fire was made of _____ and it _____ brightly.

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) "You are a *humbug*," cried the Scarecrow.
- 2) "Oh, please don't think about those *little things*!"
- 3) "That was *one of my tricks*," answered Oz.
- 4) "One day a man from the circus showed me some *tricks*."

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

- 1) The little man _____ the screen was terribly frightened.
- 2) My dear friends, please don't think _____ those little things!
- 3) How could you take the form _____ a Great Head?
- 4) He took them _____ a small room _____ the Throne Room.
- 5) My Ball _____ Fire was made _____ cotton and it burned brightly.
- 6) The balloonist began to work _____ the circus.
- 7) Every day he went in a balloon high _____ _____ the sky.

**4 What did the friends see in the Wizard's secret room?
Name three things in the room that could burn.**

**5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

- 1) Land, for, of, the, many, years, I, Oz, fooled, all, the, people, of.
- 2) I, tell, am, my, going, to, story, you.
- 3) Kansas, small, he, a, was, in, town, born, near.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to buy		
to run		
to fall		
to think		
to stand		

to take		
to show		
to become		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "You are all wrong," said the old man.
- 2) "You are a humbug," cried the Scarecrow.
- 3) "Who knows here that you are a humbug?" asked Dorothy.
- 4) "They never see me and they think I am great and terrible!" said Oz.

 **Discussing the Text**

1 Say why:

- 1) the little man behind the screen was frightened.
- 2) the little man spoke in a small voice.
- 3) the friends looked at him in great surprise.
- 4) the Wizard fooled the friends.
- 5) the Wizard fooled the people of the Land of Oz.
- 6) the Wizard called the friends' worries little things.
- 7) the old man told the friends his story.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Wizard was a humbug.
- 2) the little old man had some talents.
- 3) Dorothy was interested in his story.

3 On behalf of the Wizard speak about:

- 1) your past.
- 2) your life in the Emerald City.

- 3) the tricks you made.
- 4) things you were afraid of in the Land of Oz.

4 What is your opinion?

- 1) Was the Wizard's story happy?
- 2) Did each of the friends listen to the old man's story with the same interest?
- 3) Did the man like to be called a *humbug*? Was he a humbug?

5 Role-play.

Working with some of your classmates, read the conversation between the four friends and the Wizard. Then act it out in class.

Chapter Thirteen

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "How did you become the Great Wizard?"
- 2) "The good people think they live in the Emerald City."
- 3) "I must think about all that."

2 Say who:

- 1) built the Emerald City.
- 2) called the new city "The Emerald City".
- 3) was afraid of witches.
- 4) learned magic.
- 5) promised to keep the secret.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

sad / surprised / angry / happy / full of hope

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The little old man didn't want to speak.
- 2) The Emerald City was built a long time ago.
- 3) The Emerald City was not made of emeralds.
- 4) The old man fooled the good people of the Land of Oz.
- 5) Oz told everybody to wear green glasses.
- 6) Oz was not happy in the new country from the first day.
- 7) He was always afraid of the Wicked Witches.
- 8) If the Witches wanted they could kill Oz easily.
- 9) Oz thought he was a bad man and a bad Wizard.
- 10) Oz said he would try to keep his promises.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The Wizard started his story.
- 2) As the Wizard was afraid of the Witch of the West he asked Dorothy to kill her.
- 3) First Oz told the good people to build the city and the palace.
- 4) The good people did it all very well.
- 5) Then Oz told the people to wear green glasses.
- 6) Dorothy asked the Wizard to tell them his story to the end.
- 7) The people believed that everything in the City was made of emeralds.
- 8) All the time the people liked the Wizard and were happy.
- 9) The Wizard said he would try to do his best to help them.
- 10) The four friends were very unhappy because the Wizard couldn't keep his promise.

6 Answer the questions:

- 1) What did Dorothy ask the little man about?
- 2) Who ordered to build the palace?
- 3) Were the people of the Land of Oz good builders?
- 4) Did they know that the City was not made of emeralds?
- 5) When was the City built?
- 6) How old was Oz when his balloon brought him into a new country?
- 7) What made the Wizard's life unhappy?

- 8) Did the Wizard understand that he made wrong promises?
- 9) What did the Wizard decide to do?
- 10) When did the Wizard ask the friends to come back?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 What is the opposite? Match the words and phrases in the columns:

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| brave | to break |
| to build | to take off |
| to wear | cowardly |
| to laugh | to cry |

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

brave
easily
ready
humbug
magic
witches
try

- 1) There were two wicked _____ in the country and they could kill the Wizard _____.
- 2) The Wizard was so afraid of the Witch of the West that he was _____ to make any promise.
- 3) The Wizard didn't want to be a _____ any longer.
- 4) During many years the Wizard learned _____.
- 5) The Wizard thought that Dorothy was a _____ girl.
- 6) The old man said he would _____ to send Dorothy back to Kansas prairie.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) "*Go on, go on* with your story," said Dorothy.
- 2) "I told them to build this city and my palace," the old man *went on*.

- 3) Every day the man *went* in a balloon high *up* in the sky.
- 4) The friends *went back* to their rooms.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The good people thought they lived _____ the Emerald City. They thought everything _____ them was green. They believed the palace was made _____ emeralds, but it was made _____ glass. The Wizard told them to wear glasses, so that everything was green _____ them.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) From, that, green, time, on, for, them, all, was.
- 2) The, when, the, balloon, man, was, very, a, new, young, brought, him, to, country.
- 3) Wizard, during, all, the, learned, these, years, magic.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to build		
to think		
to bring		
to fall		
to send		
to keep		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "How did you become the Great Wizard?" asked Dorothy.

- 2) "I think you are a very bad man," said the girl.
- 3) "I can't do what I promised you to do," said the Wizard.
- 4) "Who will give me some brains?" asked the Scarecrow.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) Dorothy wanted the Wizard to go on with his story.
- 2) the Wizard called the people in the Emerald City "good people".
- 3) the Wizard told the people to wear green eye-glasses.
- 4) the Wizard was not happy.
- 5) the Wizard asked Dorothy and her friends to kill the Witch of the West.
- 6) the Wizard was sorry.
- 7) the Wizard asked the friends to come back to him on the following day.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Wizard was not happy with his life in the Emerald City.
- 2) the Wizard really wanted to help the four friends.
- 3) the friends were full of hope again.

3 On behalf of the Wizard speak about:

- 1) how the Emerald City was built.
- 2) the happiest days of your life in the Emerald City.
- 3) why you don't want to be a humbug any more.
- 4) why you want to help the four friends.

4 What is your opinion?

"I am not a bad man, but I am a bad Wizard," said the little old man. Was he right or was he wrong?

Chapter Fourteen

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "Look how wise I am now!"
- 2) "I must cut a small hole in your breast first."
- 3) "I shall never forget your help."
- 4) "I am full of courage."

2 Say who:

- 1) got up very early.
- 2) went to the Throne Room.
- 3) laughed very much.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

busy / sorry / happy / surprised / proud / grateful / sad

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The Scarecrow got up very early.
- 2) The little old man couldn't sleep that night.
- 3) The Scarecrow found the little man in the Throne Room.
- 4) The Wizard made new brains for the straw man out of pins.
- 5) The new brains were very sharp.
- 6) The Wizard cut a small hole in the right side of the Woodman's breast.
- 7) The new heart was made of red paper.
- 8) The Woodman asked if the heart was beautiful.
- 9) The Wizard kept courage in a box.
- 10) The Lion had to drink courage.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The Scarecrow found the little man in the small room.

- 2) The Tin Woodman went into the Throne Room.
- 3) The Wizard thought hard how to help Dorothy.
- 4) The Wizard laughed with joy as he looked at the three friends.
- 5) The Wizard filled the Scarecrow's head with lots of pins.
- 6) The Cowardly Lion drank courage very quickly.
- 7) The Scarecrow's head looked very big and there were many pins in it.
- 8) The Woodman loved his new heart very much.
- 9) The Lion became full of courage.
- 10) The Woodman ran back to his friends.
- 11) The Wizard put a kind heart into the hole in the Woodman's breast.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did the Wizard make the brains of?
- 2) How did the Wizard put the brains into the Scarecrow's head?
- 3) What did the Wizard make the Woodman's heart of?
- 4) Where did the Wizard keep the heart?
- 5) How did the Wizard put the new heart into the Woodman's body?
- 6) What did the Wizard make courage of?
- 7) What colour was courage?
- 8) Where did the Wizard keep courage?
- 9) How did the Lion become full of courage?
- 10) Did the Wizard make the three friends happy?
- 11) Did the Wizard have a plan how to send Dorothy back to Kansas?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?

Which of the verbs in each line is the Odd One Out?

- | | | | | | |
|------|----------|--------|----------|---------|------------|
| [-t] | knocked | asked | promised | pulled | thanked |
| [-d] | believed | helped | filled | cleaned | remembered |

2 Find in the story sentences with the following words and read them out loud:

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|----------|---------|
| clever | behind | shoulder | pins |
| sharp | hole | silk | courage |

3 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

- | |
|---------|
| breast |
| cup |
| hole |
| found |
| knocked |
| pulled |
| silk |
| wine |
| wise |

- 1) When the Scarecrow came up to the Throne Room he _____ at the door.
- 2) The Scarecrow _____ the little man in the small room.
- 3) Oz took the Scarecrow's head off and _____ the straw out of it.
- 4) "I think I am already _____ with my new brains."
- 5) The Wizard cut a small _____ in the Woodman's _____.
- 6) The new heart was made of _____.
- 7) The Wizard gave the green _____ full of red _____ to the Lion.

4 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) "I must *take* your head *off*," said Oz.
- 2) "*Take* it *off*," said the Scarecrow.
- 3) Oz went to a cupboard and *took out* a small box.
- 4) The Wicked Witch of the West never *took* a bath.

5 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Oz took the Scarecrow's head _____ and pulled the straw _____

_____ it. He put a lot _____ pins _____ the straw. He filled the head _____ all that. Then he put the head back _____ the Scarecrow's shoulders and said _____ him: "Now you have a lot _____ brains." The Scarecrow thanked Oz very much and said: "I think I am already wise _____ my new brains."

6 **The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

- 1) I, at, last, shall, brains, in, my, have, head.
- 2) Oz, into, a, put, lot, straw, of, pins, the.
- 3) He, his, cupboard, went, to, and, green, took, cup, out, a.

7 **How well do you know irregular verbs?**

a) **Write the missing forms of the verbs below:**

	got up	
	went	
	understood	
	thought	
	cut	
	drank	

b) **Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.**

8 **Report the sentences in indirect speech.**

- 1) "I am going to the Great Wizard," said the Scarecrow.
- 2) "I know you have no brains, but I like you as you are," said Dorothy.
- 3) "I remember it very well," said Oz.
- 4) "I shall never forget your help," said the Tin Woodman.
- 5) "I have come to get my courage," said the Lion.

 **Discussing the Text**

1 **Say why:**

- 1) the Wizard made the brains for the Scarecrow out of pins.
- 2) the Tin Woodman asked if the Wizard wanted to give him a kind heart.
- 3) the Cowardly Lion had to drink courage.
- 4) the three friends were very happy.
- 5) Oz laughed very much.
- 6) Oz thought that the three friends were very funny.
- 7) it wasn't easy for Oz to make Dorothy happy.

2 **Prove that:**

- 1) the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Cowardly Lion wanted to share (*поделиться*) their joy with their friends.
- 2) the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Cowardly Lion were ready to do anything the Wizard asked them for.
- 3) each of the friends believed that the poor old man was a Great Wizard.
- 4) the thought of Dorothy made the Wizard sad.

3 **On behalf of one of the characters speak about your visit to Oz. Describe in details:**

- 1) how Oz met you.
- 2) what you saw in his room.
- 3) what Oz asked you to do.
- 4) what you felt.
- 5) how you thanked the Wizard.
- 6) who you wanted to share your happiness with.

4 **What is your opinion?**

"I told them that I'm a bad Wizard, but they don't believe me and ask to do things that I can't do. So *they* make a humbug of me!" thought the little old man. Was he right or was he wrong? Why did the friends believe him?

5 Work in pairs and act out the talk between:

- 1) the Scarecrow and the Wizard.
- 2) Dorothy and the Scarecrow.
- 3) the Tin Woodman and the Wizard.
- 4) the Lion and the Wizard.

6 Read and write.

Dorothy felt very happy for her friends. She was happy that the Scarecrow had new sharp brains, and the Tin Woodman had a kind heart, and the Lion was full of courage. All her friends' wishes came true. Was there anybody in the Land of Oz she could share her happiness with? Of course, there was! Dorothy remembered the Good Witch of the North and sat down to write a letter to her. What do you think the little girl wrote to her about?

Chapter Fifteen

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "Do you want to go with me?"
- 2) "The Great Oz is going to see his brother-wizard, who lives in the air."
- 3) "I know he will be a very good ruler."
- 4) "Oz was always our friend."

2 Say who:

- 1) talked about wonderful ideas.
- 2) worked to make a balloon.
- 3) brought a big basket.
- 4) tied the basket to the balloon.
- 5) made a big fire.
- 6) flew away in the balloon.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

worried / happy / full of ideas / glad / helpful / in panic

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The little girl was unhappy.
- 2) On the fourth day the Wizard sent for Dorothy.
- 3) Dorothy walked to the Throne Room.
- 4) The Wizard thought the best way to get back to Kansas was through air.
- 5) The Wizard knew a lot about making balloons.
- 6) The Wizard was going to stay in the Emerald City.
- 7) Dorothy helped the Wizard to make a balloon.
- 8) The people of the City gathered together in front of the palace.
- 9) They saw the Wizard for the first time in their lives.
- 10) Dorothy found Toto in the big basket.
- 11) The balloon rose into the air without Dorothy.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The Wizard couldn't make the balloon go down.
- 2) The Wizard called Dorothy to the palace.
- 3) Dorothy learned that Oz wanted to come with her.
- 4) When the balloon was ready the Green Soldier spoke to the good people.
- 5) The good people of the Emerald City cried "Good-bye" to the Wizard.
- 6) The Tin Woodman made a big fire.
- 7) The Wizard told Dorothy about his plan.
- 8) The balloon was ready to go into the air.
- 9) Dorothy couldn't find Toto.
- 10) They began to build a balloon.
- 11) Suddenly the balloon flew up into the air.

6 Answer the questions.

- 1) How many days didn't Dorothy see the Wizard?
- 2) What did the Scarecrow do?

- 3) What did the Tin Woodman do?
- 4) What did the Lion do?
- 5) When did the Wizard send for Dorothy?
- 6) Did the Wizard have a plan how to help Dorothy?
- 7) Did the Wizard want to make a cyclone?
- 8) Did the Wizard have a balloon?
- 9) What did the Wizard decide to make a balloon of?
- 10) What did he want to fill the balloon with?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

**1 How well do you know the rules of reading?
Which of the verbs in each line is the Odd One Out?**

[-t] passed talked walked loved worked
[-d] tied cried wanted lived remembered

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

circus
called
silk
gas
falls
fool
obey
remembered
ruler

- 1) The Wizard wanted to make the balloon out of _____.
- 2) Hot air is not so good as _____. But there was no _____ in all the country.
- 3) Hot air becomes cold very quickly, and the balloon _____.
- 4) Oz wanted to leave the country because he didn't want to _____ the good people any longer.
- 5) Oz thought that he could work for the _____ again.
- 6) Oz believed the Scarecrow would be a good _____, so the people of the country must _____ him and like him.

- 7) The good people _____ the Wizard their friend and always _____ him.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) "Quick! Or the balloon will *rise*," said Oz.
- 2) Oz *put out* his hand to help Dorothy, but at that moment the balloon suddenly *rose* into the air.
- 3) "In my *absence* the Scarecrow will rule the country," said Oz.
- 4) "I know he will be a very good *ruler*, so you must *obey* and like him."

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Tin Woodman made a big fire _____ front _____ the palace. Oz held the balloon _____ the fire. Soon the balloon was full _____ hot air. The Wizard got _____ a basket and said _____ the people that he was going to visit his brother-wizard who lived _____ the sky. _____ his absence he asked the Scarecrow to be the ruler _____ the Emerald City.

**5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up.
Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.**

- 1) Kansas, the, back, best, through, way, to, get, to, is, the, air.
- 2) The, green, brought, a, big, basket, soldier.
- 3) The, tied, the, old, basket, to, the, balloon, man.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to get		
		known
	came	
to become		

	began	
to rise		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "I shall make the balloon out of silk," said the Wizard.
- 2) "I am afraid to go out of my rooms," said the Wizard.
- 3) "I can't find Toto," cried the little girl.
- 4) "I can't come back," cried Oz from the basket.
- 5) "We shall never forget our good friend," cried the good people.

 **Discussing the Text**

1 Say why the Wizard:

- 1) didn't send for Dorothy for three days.
- 2) wanted to fly away by air.
- 3) didn't want to stay in the Land of Oz.
- 4) asked Dorothy for help.
- 5) spoke to the good people of the Emerald City.
- 6) asked the Scarecrow to rule his city in his absence.
- 7) couldn't help Dorothy and Toto to get into the basket.
- 8) couldn't come back.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Wizard knew a lot about balloon-making.
- 2) it wasn't easy to make the balloon.
- 3) the good people of the Emerald City loved Oz.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about your visit to Oz. Describe in details:

- 1) how Oz met you.

- 2) what you saw in his room.
- 3) what Oz told you about.
- 4) what surprised you in his words.
- 5) what Oz asked you to do.
- 6) how you felt.
- 7) who you wanted to share your happiness with.

4 What is your opinion?

- 1) Why did the Wizard think the Scarecrow would make a good ruler?
- 2) Why didn't the Wizard ask the Tin Woodman or the Lion to rule the Emerald City?

5 Work in pairs and act out the talk between Dorothy and the Wizard.

6 Read and draw.

You know that the Wizard came to the Land of Oz in a balloon. It was a professional circus balloon, wasn't it? How different was that balloon from the one the Wizard made with Dorothy and her friends? Draw a picture of two balloons and explain the difference to your classmates.

7 Read and write.

- a) When the Scarecrow inspected the Throne Room, he found a lot of drawings of hot air balloons. But there were no instructions how to make one. The Scarecrow was puzzled.
 - Can you help him and write a good instruction how to make a hot air balloon?
- b) The good people of the Emerald City had a special book in which they wrote down information about all great events in the city. There was a page describing the day when a good Wizard came to their country, and several pages about Dorothy's visit. What do you think the good people wrote in that book about the Wizard's last day in the City?

Chapter Sixteen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 Who said it?

- 1) "But I don't want to live here."
- 2) "But what can we do, how can we help you?"
- 3) "I know she will help you, she is very kind."
- 4) "I want to help Dorothy. I am not cowardly now."

2 Say who:

- 1) cried all the time.
- 2) sat on the big throne.
- 3) told the friends about Ozma.
- 4) walked through dangerous woods.
- 5) met the friends at Ozma's palace.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

unhappy / sorry for Dorothy / wishing to help / thoughtful / very kind / brave

4 Say *true, false, or I don't know.*

- 1) The friends felt sorry for Dorothy.
- 2) The Scarecrow thought hard and he had a plan.
- 3) The Green Soldier told the friends about Ozma.
- 4) Ozma was the Good Witch of the North.
- 5) Dorothy knew Ozma.
- 6) The Soldier said that Ozma was very kind.
- 7) The road to the Country of the South was full of wonders.
- 8) The Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion decided to go with Dorothy.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) The Scarecrow sat on the throne and thought.

- 2) All the friends decided to come along with Dorothy.
- 3) They saw green fields and nice gardens full of fruit.
- 4) Early in the morning the friends left the Emerald City.
- 5) He thought how they could help Dorothy to get back home.
- 6) The Green Soldier said that only Ozma could help Dorothy.
- 7) Dorothy asked the girl-soldiers to take her to Ozma.
- 8) The Scarecrow asked the Green Soldier to come into the Throne Room.
- 9) The road to the South was full of many dangers.
- 10) Ozma asked the friends to come into her Throne Room.

6 Answer the questions:

- 1) What made the Tin Woodman cry?
- 2) What did the Scarecrow want Dorothy to do?
- 3) Was the Scarecrow the ruler of the Land of Oz?
- 4) Who was the ruler of the Land of Oz?
- 5) Where did Ozma live?
- 6) Did the friends start for the Country of the South at once?
- 7) What happened at the gate of the Emerald City in the morning?
- 8) Was the Country of the South far away?
- 9) Was the road pleasant?
- 10) How did the friends know that they came to the Country of the South?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 How well do you know the rules of reading?

Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[a:]	garden	ask	want	heart	last
[ai]	time	high	cried	kind	live
[ei]	take	danger	way	palace	stay

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

cowardly
gate
giants
forests
once
leave
mountains
way

- 1) Dorothy wanted to go to the Country of the South at _____.
- 2) As the Lion was no longer _____ he decided to come along with Dorothy.
- 3) The kind heart told the Woodman not to _____ Dorothy.
- 4) The Green Soldier opened the _____ for them.
- 5) They walked through dark _____ and went up high _____.
- 6) Wicked _____ tried to kill them.
- 7) It was a very long _____ to the Country of the South.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) With these words the soldier *left* the room.
- 2) "How can I *leave* her now when she wants my help?"
- 3) The friends *left* the Emerald City early in the morning.
- 4) Wicked *giants* tried to kill them.
- 5) The girl-soldier *took* our friends to a big Throne Room.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

On the way _____ the Country _____ the South the friends met _____ many dangers, but each time their love _____ one another helped them. At last they came _____ a rich and happy country. They saw a lot _____ green fields and nice gardens full _____ fruit. Then the friends came _____ a very beautiful palace. Three young girl-soldiers stood _____ the gate. The girl-soldiers looked _____ the little girl and her companions _____ a smile. One _____ them came _____ _____

Dorothy and asked: "Where do you come _____? What do you want _____ the Country _____ the South?" Dorothy told the girl-soldier who they were and asked her to take them _____ Ozma.

5 The words in the sentences below are jumbled up. Re-write the sentences, putting the words in the right order.

- 1) Dorothy, poor, all, the, cried, time.
- 2) Dorothy, to, home, soon, hoped, get.
- 3) Green, early, Soldier, next, unlocked, morning, their, the, eye-glasses.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to see		
to stand		
to find		
to leave		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "I want to go back to Kansas and live with Aunt Em and Uncle Henry," cried Dorothy.
- 2) "Ozma is the ruler of the Land of Oz," said the Green Soldier.
- 3) "How shall I find her?" asked the little girl.
- 4) "It's very easy to find her palace, but the way there is full of dangers," said the soldier.
- 5) "We shall start tomorrow morning," said Dorothy.
- 6) "What is your name?" asked one of the girl-soldiers.
- 7) "Ozma asks you to come in," the girl said to Dorothy.

Discussing the Text

1 Say why the Scarecrow:

- 1) sat on the throne.
- 2) wanted Dorothy not to think about Kansas.
- 3) wanted Dorothy to live in the Emerald City.
- 4) thought hard.
- 5) wanted to come along with Dorothy to the Country of the South.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Tin Woodman was very sorry for Dorothy.
- 2) the Scarecrow had sharp brains.
- 3) the friends couldn't leave Dorothy without help.
- 4) the way to the South was full of dangers.
- 5) the Country of the South looked beautiful.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

- 1) why you were not happy in the beautiful Emerald City.
- 2) how you first heard of Ozma.
- 3) what you thought of your friends' decision to come along with you.
- 4) the way to the Country of the South.
- 5) what you saw in Ozma's country.

4 What is your opinion?

The Scarecrow thought that if Dorothy didn't think about Kansas she could be happy in the beautiful city. Was he right? Do you agree with him? Is this a place that makes a person happy?

5 Work in little groups and act out the talks between:

- 1) Dorothy, the Scarecrow and the Green Soldier.
- 2) Dorothy, the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion.
- 3) three girl-soldiers and Dorothy.

6 Read and draw.

Now you know a lot about the Land of Oz. Can you draw a map of it in order to help Dorothy and her friends to get to the Country of the South? If you are a good artist, make your map pictorial.

Chapter Seventeen

? Checking Comprehension

1 Who said it?

- 1) "What can I do for you, child?"
- 2) "Oh, they are magic shoes!"
- 3) "East or West, home is best."
- 4) "I shall go back to the Emerald City."
- 5) "We want to go to the Emerald City with him."

2 Say who:

- 1) knew the magic of the silver shoes.
- 2) wanted to know what the friends' plans were.
- 3) wanted to go back to the Emerald City.
- 4) asked Dorothy to come to the Land of Oz again.
- 5) ran out of the house to greet Dorothy.

3 Say who in this Chapter is:

kind / surprised / glad / a good friend / sad / sorry / happy

4 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Ozma was young and beautiful.
- 2) Ozma had a beautiful silk dress on.
- 3) Ozma's dress was yellow.
- 4) Ozma called Dorothy 'dear child'.
- 5) Ozma asked Dorothy a lot of questions.

- 6) Ozma knew the magic of the silver shoes.
- 7) Dorothy wanted to leave the Land of Oz at once.
- 8) The Scarecrow wanted to go to Kansas.
- 9) Ozma made the Emerald City the capital of the Land of Oz.
- 10) Dorothy promised to come back as soon as possible.

5 Put the sentences in the right order.

- 1) Dorothy took Toto in her arms and said good-bye to her friends.
- 2) Now Dorothy knew that she could get to Kansas easily.
- 3) She turned on her left foot three times and said the magic words.
- 4) Dorothy learned what the magic of the shoes was.
- 5) Aunt Em and Uncle Henry were happy to see Dorothy back.
- 6) Dorothy asked Ozma for help.
- 7) All the friends wanted to go back to the Emerald City.
- 8) Dorothy told Ozma her story.
- 9) The Scarecrow said he wanted to be the ruler of the Emerald City.
- 10) Ozma asked the friends what they wanted to do.

6 Answer the questions:

- 1) What did Ozma look like?
- 2) What did Ozma ask Dorothy about?
- 3) What was Dorothy worried about?
- 4) Could Ozma help Dorothy?
- 5) What was the magic of the silver shoes?
- 6) What did Dorothy suddenly understand?
- 7) Did the magic work easily?
- 8) What did Dorothy have to do if she wanted to go home?
- 9) What did Dorothy want to know before going away?
- 10) When did Ozma ask Dorothy to come back?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

- 1 How well do you know the rules of reading?**
Which of the words in each line is the Odd One Out?

[u:]	ruler	much	blue	fool
[ai]	white	child	witch	time
[ei]	great	leave	wait	say

2 Complete the sentences. The words from the box can help you.

birthday eyes capital carry leave turn terrible

- 1) Ozma looked at Dorothy with her beautiful blue _____ and spoke to her.
- 2) My aunt thinks that some _____ thing has happened to me.
- 3) Your silver shoes will _____ you there.
- 4) You must _____ round on your left foot three times.
- 5) The friends didn't want to _____ the Scarecrow.
- 6) The Emerald City will be the _____ of the Land of Oz.
- 7) Ozma's _____ was a great holiday in the Land of Oz.

3 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Turn on your left foot three *times*.
- 2) Dorothy understood why the Wicked Witch wanted *to take* the shoes from her.
- 3) "*Take* me home to Aunt Em!"
- 4) Aunt Em cried with joy and *took* the girl in her arms.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy thanked the Good Fairy, and said good-bye _____ her friends. Then _____ Toto _____ her arms she turned _____ her left foot three times and said _____ the silver shoes: "Take

me home _____ Aunt Em!" And surprise, surprise! When she opened her eyes she saw her uncle's new farm _____ front _____ her. She was _____ Kansas again and her aunt and uncle were running _____ her.

5 What did they ask?

Aunt Em and Uncle Henry were very happy to see Dorothy. They asked her a lot of questions. Their first questions were: "Where have you been all this time? Where did you come from?" Can you imagine what their other questions were, when they learned that Dorothy and Toto came from the Land of Oz? Write down at least six questions.

6 How well do you know irregular verbs?

a) Write the missing forms of the verbs below:

to know		
to leave		
to find		
to go		

b) Find in the story the sentences with these verbs and read them out loud.

7 Report the sentences in indirect speech.

- 1) "Now I want to go back to Kansas," said Dorothy.
- 2) "I can tell you how to get back to Kansas," said Ozma.
- 3) "We don't want to leave our friend the Scarecrow," said the Tin Woodman..
- 4) "My birthday is a great holiday in the Land of Oz," said Ozma.
- 5) "Where have you been all the time?" cried Aunt Em.
- 6) "What is your name?" asked one of the girl-soldiers.
- 7) "Ozma asks you to come in," the girl said to Dorothy.

✦ Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) Ozma wanted to know Dorothy's story.
- 2) Ozma understood that Dorothy knew nothing about the magic of the shoes.
- 3) Dorothy was surprised.
- 4) Ozma and Dorothy asked the three friends about their plans.
- 5) Ozma asked Dorothy to come again.
- 6) the friends asked Dorothy to come again.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Ozma was glad to help Dorothy.
- 2) Dorothy was a grateful girl.
- 3) Dorothy was a good friend.
- 4) Ozma liked the friends and wanted them to be happy.
- 5) Ozma and Dorothy's friends wanted the little girl to come back.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

- 1) Ozma.
- 2) what you have learned about the silver shoes.
- 3) how the magic of the shoes worked.
- 4) what you have learned about your friends' plans.
- 5) your first day back in Kansas.

4 What is your opinion?

"East or West, home is best."

- 1)* What did Dorothy mean by these words?
- 2) What do people in Russia say when they mean the same?
- 3) Have you ever said these words yourself? When was it?

5 Work in little groups and act out the talks between

- 1) Dorothy and Ozma.
- 2) Ozma, the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman and the Lion.
- 3) Dorothy, Ozma and the three friends.

PART TWO

Chapter One

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 **Make the right choice:**

- 1) Bini Aru was
a) an animal
b) an old man
c) a magic word
- 2) Bini Aru knew
a) a magic word
b) a magic place
c) a magic stone
- 3) Kiki Aru was
a) Bini Aru's friend
b) Bini Aru's son
c) Bini Aru's bird
- 4) Kiki Aru found
a) a piece of paper
b) a floor board
c) a strange writing
- 5) Kiki became
a) a little bird
b) a strong bird
c) a wild beast

2 **Say true, false, or I don't know.**

- 1) Bini Aru lived in the Land of Oz.
- 2) Bini Aru lived in the Emerald City.
- 3) Bini Aru had a secret.
- 4) Bini Aru didn't know what his real form was.
- 5) Bini Aru often used the magic word.
- 6) Bini Aru was afraid to forget the magic word.
- 7) Bini Aru told his son about his secret.
- 8) Kiki Aru found the secret place by chance.
- 9) Kiki stumbled over a floor board.
- 10) Kiki couldn't read the writing.

3 **Answer the questions.**

- 1) What word was magic?
- 2) What magic could the word make?
- 3) When did Bini Aru change his form?
- 4) Was Bini Aru a wicked man?
- 5) Where did Bini Aru find a secret place?
- 6) What did Bini Aru hide in the secret place?
- 7) Did Bini Aru tell his son about his secret?
- 8) What was Kiki Aru doing in his father's room?
- 9) How did Kiki learn his father's secret?
- 10) What did Kiki do with the floor board?
- 11) How did Kiki learn the magic word?
- 12) Where did Kiki hide the copy of the writing?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **Divide the words in the box into three categories:**

place to live	people	animal

capital	city
girl	country
man	land
sheep	woman
room	house
home	boy
lion	

2 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) *At last* Bini Aru decided to find a secret place in the house.
- 2) Kiki was a *wicked* boy.

- 3) As he went back to the door he *stumbled* again over that floor board.
- 4) So Kiki learned the word *by heart*.
- 5) I want to become a *hawk*!

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

As the boy came _____ his father's room, he stumbled _____ one _____ the floor boards. He didn't find any interesting things _____ the room and decided to leave. But _____ that moment he stumbled _____ the same floor board again. Kiki looked _____ the board _____ a long time. Then he took the board _____, and saw some writing _____ the back _____ it. Kiki couldn't believe his eyes! He understood that there was great magic _____ the word. It could change him _____ a bird or an animal!

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) It was a very easy thing to do | when he went far away from home and was very hungry. |
| 2) Bini Aru usually changed his form | that he must not come into his room. |
| 3) Bini Aru told his son | it could change you back into your real form. |
| 4) Kiki took the board out and | if you knew how to say the magic word. |
| 5) If you repeated the word again | he repeated it a hundred times. |
| 6) Kiki wanted to fly away from his country | saw some writing on the back of it. |
| 7) As Kiki wanted to remember the magic word by heart | because he hated to live in it. |

 **Discussing the Text**

1 Say why:

- 1) Bini Aru changed his form.

- 2) Bini Aru kept the magic word a secret.
- 3) Bini Aru wrote down the magic word.
- 4) Kiki Aru came to his father's room.
- 5) Kiki looked at the floor board with interest.
- 6) Kiki wanted to become a bird.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the magic word was difficult to remember.
- 2) Kiki Aru was a wicked boy.
- 3) Kiki didn't like the Munchkin Country.
- 4) Kiki was happy to learn his father's secret.
- 5) Kiki Aru was afraid to forget the word.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) Bini Aru was afraid to forget the magic word.
- 2) Kiki Aru took the floor board and saw some strange writing on it.
- 3) Kiki Aru learned the word by heart.
- 4) Kiki Aru decided to become a bird.

4 On behalf of Bini Aru speak about:

- 1) the country you live in.
- 2) things you like to do.
- 3) your son.

5 On behalf of Kiki Aru speak about:

- 1) the house you live in.
- 2) things you like to do.
- 3) your best wish.
- 4) the day you found a strange floor board.

6 Read and write.

What exactly did the writing on the board say? Can you write it down?

Chapter Two

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- 1) Kiki flew for
a) an hour
b) a long time
c) two days
- 2) Kiki Aru saw
a) a palace
b) a bank
c) an inn
- 3) Kiki Aru had
a) some money
b) much money
c) no money
- 4) The innkeeper
a) asked Kiki to come in
b) told Kiki to go away
c) gave Kiki a gold piece
- 5) Kiki
a) found a gold piece
b) lost a gold piece
c) stole a gold piece

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Kiki rose into the air and flew over the Munchkin Country.
- 2) Soon Kiki became very tired.
- 3) He decided to rest a little in a tree.
- 4) The boy didn't know what hawks ate.
- 5) Kiki didn't want to sleep in a tree.
- 6) Kiki didn't have any money.
- 7) The innkeeper gave Kiki a good supper and a bed.
- 8) Kiki needed some money badly.
- 9) Kiki had to change his form again.
- 10) Nobody saw Kiki steal a gold piece.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) Where did Kiki fly to?

- 2) Did he fly for a long time?
- 3) Did Kiki want to sleep like a bird or did he want to sleep like a boy?
- 4) Where did Kiki go for supper?
- 5) Did he get his supper?
- 6) What did the boy see through the open window?
- 7) How many gold pieces did Kiki want to get?
- 8) How did the boy get the money?
- 9) Where did Kiki put the gold piece?
- 10) Who said that magic was wicked?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) From his tree the hawk could see a big *inn*.
- 2) The *innkeeper* asked the boy for some money.
- 3) Kiki could not *stay* at the hotel.
- 4) Kiki saw a lot of *gold pieces* on the table.
- 5) The bird caught up one of the gold pieces in its *beak*.
- 6) To *steal* money is very *wicked*!

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The boy could not stay _____ the hotel _____ money. He stood _____ a long time _____ the yard and didn't know what to do. Suddenly _____ an open window the boy saw a big room _____ a table _____ the middle _____ it. There was a lot _____ gold pieces _____ the table. An old man went up _____ the table and began to count the money. Kiki thought it was his luck. _____ one _____ those gold pieces he could get food _____ supper and a bed _____ the night.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- 1) Kiki (to rise) into the air and (to fly) away into a new world.
- 2) He (to come) down and (to sit) in a tree.
- 3) The boy (to go) to the inn and (to ask) the innkeeper (to give) him a good supper.

- 4) Kiki (to fly) into a tree and (to drop) the gold piece to the ground.
- 5) The little bird (to speak) in a small voice.
- 6) The little bird (to see) Kiki (to steal) the money.
- 7) The bird (to say) Kiki (to be sorry) for that one day.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) Kiki decided to have some rest | so he changed his form and became Kiki again. |
| 2) As Kiki was in the form of a bird | began to count the money. |
| 3) The boy didn't know what birds ate | the hawk flew through it and caught a gold piece. |
| 4) If you have no money | because he was very tired. |
| 5) The innkeeper came up to the table and | he decided to rest in a little tree. |
| 6) As the window was opened | you must go away at once. |

 **Discussing the story**

1 Say why:

- 1) Kiki was tired.
- 2) Kiki flew down to the ground.
- 3) the innkeeper didn't give the boy any food.
- 4) Kiki became a hawk again.
- 5) the little bird spoke to Kiki.
- 6) Kiki was glad.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Kiki Aru knew very little about birds.
- 2) Kiki has never been to a hotel before.
- 3) it was easy for a hawk to get a gold piece from the house.
- 4) Kiki has done something wicked.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) From his tree Kiki saw an inn.
- 2) An old man went up to the table.
- 3) The hawk flew into the room.
- 4) Kiki heard a small voice.
- 5) Kiki heard a big voice behind him.

4 On behalf of the little bird speak about:

- 1) what you saw happen in the yard of the inn.
- 2) what you thought of the boy.
- 3) what made you fly away.

5 Act out the talk between:

- 1) Kiki Aru and the innkeeper.
- 2) Kiki Aru and the little bird.

6 What is your opinion?

The little bird said: "Magic is wicked" and "To steal money is very, very wicked." Was the bird right?

Chapter Three

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1) The strange man was | a) a Wizard
b) a wicked king
c) a good king |
| 2) The Nome people | a) loved their King
b) kicked their King out of the country
c) killed their King |

- 3) Kiki Aru
- didn't talk to the stranger
 - told the stranger the truth about himself
 - didn't tell the stranger the truth about himself
- 4) The innkeeper
- sent for a cook
 - gave the two visitors no food
 - cooked the supper for the visitors
- 5) Kiki's words
- made the stranger smile
 - frightened the strange man
 - made the stranger unhappy
- 6) The stranger wanted
- to be King of the Land of Oz
 - to be the ruler of the Emerald City
 - to become the Nome King again

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- The man who spoke in a big voice was old and fat.
- The stranger's pockets were full of heavy stones.
- The stranger was on his way home.
- The man said that he used to be a king.
- The man thought Kiki was a Wizard.
- The stranger said he used to have good magic tools himself.
- The innkeeper made a very good supper for Kiki and the stranger.
- The stranger stole his jewels from the Oz people.
- The Nome King hated Ozma.
- The Nome King promised to give Kiki a lot of jewels.

3 Answer the questions.

- What did the stranger look like?
- What were his pockets full of?
- Where did the old man take all his jewels from?

- Who was the old man?
- Did the Nome King have a lot of friends in the Land of Oz?
- What did the Nome King ask Kiki about?
- What did Kiki and the stranger pay for their supper?
- Who cooked the supper?
- Was Kiki afraid of the Nome King?
- Did the Nome King tell Kiki about his wish?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- The stranger's pockets were full of *jewels*.
- The people of Oz *kicked him out* of the country.
- The Nome King used to have some very good magic *tools*.
- Will you help me to *conquer* the Land of Oz?
- The Oz people were his *enemies*.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

- a) When they came _____ the inn, the innkeeper looked _____ Kiki very angrily. He knew that the boy had no money _____ his supper and bed. But Kiki took a gold piece _____ his pocket and showed it _____ the master. Then the innkeeper turned _____ the Nome and asked if he had the money _____ his supper and bed. The Nome took _____ a bag and threw a lot _____ jewels _____ the table. The innkeeper and Kiki looked _____ the jewels _____ surprise.
- b) Kiki was not afraid _____ the stranger because _____ the help _____ the magic word he could easily change him _____ a tree or a stone _____ a moment. The stranger wanted to know Kiki's secret. But Kiki didn't want to talk _____ it. Then the Nome King promised Kiki to make him the King _____ Oz. And as Kiki liked the idea, he said he would think _____ it.

3 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) The pockets of his clothes were big | but the Oz people kicked him out of the country. |
| 2) Once the stranger was the Nome King | I shall go away. |
| 3) When they came into the inn | the innkeeper looked at them angrily. |
| 4) When I have conquered the Oz people | because he kept a lot of jewels in them. |
| 5) The innkeeper ran into the kitchen | because he hated them. |
| 6) The stranger wanted to conquer the Oz people | to make a good supper for the visitors. |

- 2) The old man was once a king.
- 3) When they came into the inn the innkeeper looked at them.
- 4) The Nome hated all the Oz people.

4 On behalf of Kiki speak about:

- 1) the strange man you saw.
- 2) what you thought the man wanted of you.
- 3) what made you not to be afraid of the stranger.
- 4) your second meeting with the innkeeper.

5 Act out the talk between:

- 1) Kiki Aru and the strange man when they met for the first time.
- 2) Kiki Aru and the Nome after supper.
- 3) the innkeeper, Kiki and the Nome at the door of the inn.

6 What is your opinion?

The Nome said: "Well, in our time it happens very often. People just come and kick their kings out of their countries." Did the people of Oz have no reason for kicking the Nome out of their country?

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) Kiki turned around.
- 2) the old man looked strange.
- 3) the stranger was very rich.
- 4) the stranger didn't want to talk about himself.
- 5) the stranger wanted to know Kiki's secret.
- 6) the innkeeper ran to the kitchen.
- 7) Kiki asked the Nome not to speak very loud.
- 8) the Nome wanted to conquer the Land of Oz.
- 9) Kiki laughed when the Nome became angry.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Nome was wicked.
- 2) Kiki was not afraid of the Nome.
- 3) the Nome wanted to know Kiki's secret very much.
- 4) the Nome liked Kiki.
- 5) Kiki liked the idea of being the King of Oz.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) Kiki saw a strange old man.

Chapter Four

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1) The old man thought that | a) the boy was silly
b) the boy was clever
c) the boy needed help |
| 2) Kiki Aru | a) liked the Nome's plan
b) didn't like the Nome's plan
c) changed the Nome's plan |

- 3) The old man a) turned into a bird
 b) asked Kiki to change his form
 c) changed Kiki into a bird
- 4) Kiki a) wanted to fly at once
 b) wanted to fly in the afternoon
 c) wanted to wait till evening
- 5) The two people a) turned into hawks
 b) turned into little birds
 c) turned into eagles

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The old man wanted Kiki to help him.
- 2) The old man's plan was wicked.
- 3) The Nome thought and spoke the same things.
- 4) Kiki wanted to keep the magic word his secret.
- 5) The Nome was far away from Kiki when the boy said the magic word.
- 6) The Nome was happy to become a great eagle.
- 7) The large and strong eagle spoke in the innkeeper's voice.
- 8) The Nome understood that the boy was not silly.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) How did Kiki decide to get to the Land of Oz?
- 2) Did Kiki want the Nome to come with him?
- 3) Did the Nome tell Kiki the truth?
- 4) Did the Nome really want to make Kiki the ruler of the Oz country?
- 5) What did the Nome want to do with the beasts of the big forest?
- 6) What did the Nome want to change Kiki into?
- 7) What did Kiki want to change the Nome into?
- 8) Who wanted to do harm?
- 9) Where did Kiki and Nome wait for the evening?
- 10) What did they do when the evening came?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) The Nome wanted *to do harm* to Kiki.
- 2) Wicked people try *to harm* one another.
- 3) I see now that the boy is not *silly*.
- 4) In a moment the Nome became a great *eagle*.
- 5) The old man hoped that Kiki would help him to conquer his *enemies*.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

As Kiki Aru knew very little _____ the Land _____ Oz, he listened _____ the Nome's plan _____ interest. The plan was easy. The Nome wanted them both to fly _____ the Land _____ Oz _____ the form _____ birds. He said it would be nice to change _____ large and strong birds. He explained that there were a lot _____ big forests _____ Oz country. Those forests were full _____ beasts. The Nome wanted to change all the beasts _____ men and women. _____ their help the Nome wished to conquer the people _____ Oz. At the same time the Nome wanted to change all the people _____ Oz _____ beasts and send them to live _____ the forests.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- 1) When the evening (to come) they (to go out) into the yard.
- 2) They (to stand) under a big tree and (to speak).
- 3) Kiki (to ask) the Nome (to stay) under the tree while he (to go away).
- 4) The Nome first (to think) that the boy (to be) silly, but he (to change) his mind soon.
- 5) Suddenly the Nome (to feel) that his form (to begin) to change.
- 6) As soon as the magic change (to happen) the two eagles (to fly) high up in the sky.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) The Nome told Kiki about his plan | because he could fool the Nome easily. |
| 2) Kiki was sure that he would rule the Oz people | he quickly walked away. |
| 3) As the weather was very hot the two people | he felt that his form began to change. |
| 4) As Kiki didn't want the Nome to hear the word | because he wanted the boy to help him. |
| 5) While the Nome was standing under a big tree | he listened to the Nome's stories with interest. |
| 6) As Kiki didn't know much about the Land of Oz | decided to wait till evening. |

- 1) what you talked in the inn about.
- 2) what you thought of the plan.
- 3) what you wanted to become after you have conquered the Land of Oz.
- 4) what you wanted to do with your companion.

5 Act out the talk between:

Kiki Aru and the Nome as they stood under a tree in the yard.

6 What is your opinion?

"Wicked people always try to harm one another". Do you agree with these words?
Can good people sometimes do harm?

 **Discussing the Text**

1 Say why:

- 1) Kiki listened to the Nome's plan.
- 2) Kiki wanted to fly to the Land of Oz.
- 3) the Nome thought one thing and said another.
- 4) Kiki and the Nome wanted to harm one another.
- 5) Kiki changed the Nome and himself into eagles.
- 6) the Nome thought that Kiki was clever.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Kiki Aru wanted to be great.
- 2) the Nome wanted to harm Kiki.
- 3) the Nome was afraid of Kiki.
- 4) the Nome's plan was wicked.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) There were many forests in the Land of Oz.
- 2) The Nome wanted to do harm to Kiki.
- 3) Kiki wanted to do harm to the Nome.

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

Chapter Five

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1) The Wizard's balloon | a) flew away.
b) fell down
c) came back |
| 2) The Woodman | a) told Dorothy his secret
b) didn't tell Dorothy his secret
c) asked Dorothy about her secret |
| 3) The Scarecrow | a) made a nice straw hat
b) bought a pair of straw shoes
c) made a pair of straw shoes |
| 4) Dorothy | a) liked Toto's present
b) thought Toto had a great present
c) didn't like Toto's present at all |

- 5) Dorothy wanted
- to buy some monkeys
 - to catch some monkeys
 - to take some monkeys to the forest

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- The Wizard couldn't come back to the Emerald City.
- The four friends were preparing presents for Ozma.
- The Tin Woodman wrote a beautiful poem.
- Dorothy didn't know what present to give to Ozma.
- The Scarecrow gave Dorothy good advice.
- Dorothy thought of an unusual present.
- Dorothy wanted to catch small monkeys.
- Ozma, Dorothy and the Lion went to the big forest.

3 Answer the questions.

- Where did Dorothy live?
- Did Dorothy often come to visit her friends?
- Where did the Wizard live?
- What did the Wizard do in the Emerald City?
- Where did the Tin Woodman like to spend his time?
- Did Toto learn to speak in the Land of Oz?
- Did Dorothy follow the Scarecrow's advice?
- What birthday present did Dorothy want to give to Ozma?
- Did Dorothy need any help?
- What help did Dorothy ask the Wizard for?
- Who was ready to come with Dorothy to the big forest?
- What did Dorothy want the monkeys to do?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- Now the Wizard really knew some *magic*.
- Think *very hard* and a good idea will come to you.
- But the monkeys *must be* very small.
- We shall *put them all into* the cake.
- The Lion *will roar* and frighten all the beasts.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Dorothy wanted to make a nice present _____ Ozma. But what could she give her? The girl went _____ her room, where she sat _____ and thought hard _____ a birthday present _____ the good fairy. Suddenly an idea came _____ her. She went _____ the Wizard _____ Oz and asked him _____ help. The Wizard was glad to do what he could _____ Dorothy and _____ Ozma. He listened _____ Dorothy's plan _____ interest and laughed. He didn't understand how Dorothy was going to hide a lot _____ monkeys _____ the middle _____ the cake.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- The Wizard's balloon (to fall down) not far from the Emerald City.
- Oz (to decide) to study magic.
- Dorothy (not to like) the Tin Woodman's song.
- The Scarecrow (to think) that Ozma (to love) him very much.
- Toto (to think) that some bones (to be) a wonderful present for Ozma.
- Dorothy (to go) to the Wizard for help.
- The Wizard (to be glad) to help his little friend.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) Oz wanted to study magic | because it was not good poetry. |
| 2) Dorothy often came to the Emerald City | because he believed Ozma liked straw. |
| 3) Dorothy didn't like the poem | because he did not want to be a humbug. |
| 4) The Scarecrow was making straw shoes | because they should get into the birthday cake. |
| 5) Dorothy went to her room | because she had many friends there. |
| 6) Dorothy asked Oz to make the monkeys small | because she wanted to think hard. |

Discussing the Text

1 Say why:

- 1) the Wizard went back to the Emerald City.
- 2) the Wizard decided to study magic.
- 3) the Tin Woodman spent a lot of time in the garden.
- 4) the Strawman thought straw shoes would be a good present for Ozma.
- 5) Dorothy's present was unusual.
- 6) Dorothy asked the Wizard to help her.
- 7) the Wizard wanted to go to the forest with the Lion.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Wizard has changed.
- 2) Toto has changed.
- 3) it was a difficult task for Dorothy to choose a present for Ozma.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) The Wizard was sorry.
- 2) The Tin Woodman was happy.
- 3) The Scarecrow was busy.

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

- 1) your birthday present for Ozma.
- 2) why you wanted to give that present to her.

5 Act out the talk between:

- 1) Dorothy and the Tin Woodman.
- 2) Dorothy and the Scarecrow.
- 3) Dorothy and the Wizard.

6 What is your opinion?

- 1) "Think hard and a good idea will come to you". Do you agree with these words?

- 2) Have you ever thought very hard about something and it helped you?

Chapter Six

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- 1) The King of the forest was
a) the Bear
b) the Grey Monkey
c) the Yellow Leopard
- 2) Gugu ruled the forest
a) alone
b) with the help of three friends
c) with the help of Ozma
- 3) The eagles wanted to
a) look like other animals
b) become very strange animals
c) look like strange birds
- 4) The Nome was
a) angry with Kiki Aru
b) happy with what Kiki did
c) angry with himself
- 5) Kiki Aru made magic
a) on the tree where the Nome sat
b) far from the Nome
c) under a big tree

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) There were hundreds of animals in the Land of Oz.
- 2) The animals had a strong King.
- 3) The King was strong but not clever.
- 4) The Nome wanted to speak only with Gugu.
- 5) Kiki was afraid to become a strange animal.

- 6) The strange animals should have heads of leopards.
- 7) The Nome had a secret wish.
- 8) Kiki and the Nome looked alike in their new form.
- 9) Kiki and the Nome did not look like eagles at all in their new form.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) Where did all the animals of the Land of Oz live?
- 2) Where was the big forest situated?
- 3) How did the animals call their forest?
- 4) Who did the animals obey?
- 5) Where did the two eagles stop?
- 6) Did Kiki know how many animals lived in the forest?
- 7) Did the Nome want to speak to the animals of the forest?
- 8) What animals did the Nome and Kiki decide to change into?
- 9) Did Kiki tell the Nome the magic word?
- 10) Was the Nome afraid of Kiki?
- 11) How did Kiki make magic?
- 12) What did the Nome and Kiki do when they changed their form?

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) The Bear, the Wolf and the Grey Monkey helped Gugu *to rule* the country.
- 2) The other animals *obeyed* them.
- 3) The animals will help us *to conquer* the people of Oz.
- 4) You *stay* here and I will fly to another tree.
- 5) Some day I shall *know* his secret and then.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

All the animals _____ the Land _____ Oz lived _____ a big forest _____ the middle _____ the country. When the two eagles saw the forest they flew _____ and sat _____ a tall tree. Their plan

was to go _____ the animals and tell them _____ their plans. The Nome hoped that the animals would listen _____ them and help them. But first they needed to change _____ animals. They decided to have the heads _____ lions, the bodies _____ monkeys and the wings _____ eagles. As Kiki didn't want the Nome know his magic word, he flew _____ and made magic _____ another tree. The Nome was very angry _____ the boy, but as he was afraid _____ him, he didn't say anything. Kiki changed the two eagles _____ very strange animals who could walk _____ the ground and fly _____ the sky.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- 1) One morning two eagles (to fly) high over the big forest.
- 2) In the middle of the forest the eagles (to fly) down and (to sit) in a tall tree.
- 3) As soon as Kiki (to say) the magic word the Nome (to change) his form.
- 4) Kiki and the Nome (to become) very strange animals.
- 5) The Nome (to hope) that some day he (to know) the secret word.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) The animals called the forest "Gugu Forest" | because they were strong and clever. |
| 2) The animals were afraid of their rulers | because he kept asking a lot of questions. |
| 3) The two eagles stopped to talk | because the boy didn't teach him the secret word. |
| 4) Kiki didn't know much about the Gugu Forest | because the King of the forest was Gugu. |
| 5) The Nome was very angry with Kiki | because he needed his help. |
| 6) Kiki turned into the same animal as the Nome | because they needed to decide what form to take. |

1 Say why:

- 1) three friends helped Gugu to rule the forest.
- 2) the animals obeyed their rulers.
- 3) the Nome and Kiki wanted to speak to the animals.
- 4) the eagles wanted to change their form.
- 5) the Nome wanted to look like no other animal in the forest.
- 6) Kiki made magic far away from the Nome.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the animals of the forest lived in an organized country.
- 2) Kiki was not afraid to look strange.
- 3) Kiki didn't want to obey the Nome.
- 4) the Nome was afraid of Kiki.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) The Leopard had three friends.
- 2) The Nome didn't want to be angry with Kiki.
- 3) Kiki turned the two eagles into very strange animals.

4 On behalf of the Nome speak about:

- 1) the big forest and the life of animals there.
- 2) why you wanted to look different from other animals.
- 3) why you wanted to have the head of a lion, the body of a monkey and the wings of an eagle.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

Kiki Aru and the Nome.

6 What is your opinion?

"Are you afraid to look strange?" Why did the Nome ask Kiki this question? Did Kiki answer the question? How does Kiki's reaction characterize the boy?

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1) King Gugu was | a) pleased with the forest animals |
| | b) angry with some animals |
| | c) displeased with all the animals |
| 2) The strangers | a) spoke in angry voices |
| | b) addressed the animals in a friendly way |
| | c) waited to be introduced |
| 3) King Gugu | a) believed the strangers |
| | b) thought the strangers were telling lies |
| | c) thought the strangers were telling the truth |
| 4) Kiki Aru | a) changed the Wolf into a man |
| | b) changed the Monkey into a man |
| | c) changed the Bear into a man |
| 5) The Nome wanted to turn Kiki into | a) a tree |
| | b) a stone |
| | c) a wild beast |

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The Leopard was a wise King.
- 2) King Gugu trusted his friends.
- 3) King Gugu didn't like the strange-looking animals.
- 4) The strangers spoke in a very pleasant manner.
- 5) The Bear didn't believe the strangers.
- 6) King Gugu didn't like Li-Mon-Eags' name.
- 7) King Gugu thought Li-Mon-Eags were telling lies.
- 8) The rulers of the forest wanted to see magic.
- 9) Kiki's magic frightened the animals.
- 10) The animals decided to obey Kiki.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) What were the animals discussing on a big clearing?
- 2) What did the strange beasts look like?
- 3) Did the strangers look like brother-animals?
- 4) Where did the Li-Mon-Eags live?
- 5) Why did they come down?
- 6) What did the Li-Mon-Eags tell the animals about the people of Oz?
- 7) Did the animals want to become masters of the people?
- 8) When did King Gugu begin to speak like a friend?
- 9) What did the animals decide to do?
- 10) Did the Nome tell the animals about his real plan?
- 11) Did the Nome tell Kiki about his real plan?
- 12) What did Kiki want to do with the Nome when he became King?

 Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Divide the words in the box into three categories:

people	animal	place

clearing	friend
forest	fox
giraffe	beast
city	monkey
house	slave
master	women
land	palace
man	wolf
country	enemy
brother	

2 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Leopard the King and his friends met on a big *clearing*.
- 2) The strange beasts *came up* to them.
- 3) The Nome at once *thought up* a name.
- 4) The animals will become *the masters* of the people.
- 5) I *promise* you that you will be the King of the Land of Oz.

3 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1) The animals didn't trust the Li-Mon-Eags | the people will become their slaves. |
| 2) When the animals conquer the Land of Oz | because they showed their magic to them. |
| 3) The Nome promised to change all the people into animals | because the people of Oz were neither their friends, nor their enemies. |
| 4) The animals believed the Li-Mon-Eags | because he wanted them to know about the Li-Mon-Eags' plan. |
| 5) Gugu the King was frightened | because he wasn't a real friend. |
| 6) Gugu decided to have a meeting with all the animals of the forest | because he wanted to send them to the forest to live there. |
| 7) Kiki didn't trust the Nome | because the Wolf became a little fat man. |

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Nome made _____ a clever story. He said that the Li-Mon-Eags lived _____ the sky. One day two Li-Mon-Eags flew _____ a forest _____ the Emerald City and saw a lot _____ people. They heard the people talk _____ their wicked plans. As soon as they heard that the people _____ Oz wanted to conquer the animals _____ the forest, they flew _____. When the Nome finished his story he looked _____ Gugu and his friends.

 **Discussing the Story**

1 Say why:

- 1) the Nome made up a new name for Kiki and himself.
- 2) the Nome said that he and his friend lived in the sky.
- 3) Gugu the King didn't believe the strangers.
- 4) Gugu the King asked the strangers to change the Wolf into a man.
- 5) Gugu the King changed his mind and called a meeting with all the animals.
- 6) Kiki Aru and the Nome had wicked thoughts about each other.

2 Prove that:

- 1) life in the forest was not quiet.
- 2) Gugu the King and his friends were surprised by the form of the strangers.
- 3) Gugu the King had more wit than his friends.
- 4) the Li-Mon-Eags didn't become the animals' friends at once. the Nome was happy with the result of the meeting with the King of the forest.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) Gugu the King stopped his speech.
- 2) The Wolf, the Grey Monkey and the Bear obeyed Gugu.
- 3) Kiki decided to change the Nome into a tree.

4 On behalf of the King of the Forest speak about:

- 1) the reason of your morning meeting with your friends.
- 2) the two strangers.
- 3) why you didn't trust the Li-Mon-Eags first.
- 4) what made you believe the Li-Mon-Eags.
- 5) why you wanted to see all the animals of the forest.

5 On behalf of the Wolf speak about the Li-Mon-Eags' magic.

6 Read and act out the talk between:

the Nome and Kiki Aru.

7 What is your opinion?

"The wicked people can never be real friends". Do you share this opinion? Speak with your classmates and find out what they think about it.

Chapter Eight

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1) There were | a) dozens of beasts in the forest |
| | b) hundreds of beasts in the forest |
| | c) thousands of beasts in the forest |
| 2) The Leopard sat | a) on a big throne |
| | b) on a big stone |
| | c) on a big tortoise |
| 3) The King spoke | a) in a loud voice |
| | b) in a secret voice |
| | c) in a quiet voice |
| 4) The animals wanted the strangers | a) to go away |
| | b) to speak |
| | c) to show their magic |
| 5) The animals | a) agreed to the Nome's plan |
| | b) argued about the Nome's plan |
| | c) obeyed their King's decision |

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) All the animals of the forest came to the big clearing.
- 2) All the beasts were the same.
- 3) There were no crocodiles among the animals.
- 4) The Leopard addressed the animals in a friendly way.
- 5) The animals had never seen any beast like Li-Mon-Eags before.
- 6) Both of the magicians wanted to speak to the animals.
- 7) The Nome spoke for a short time.
- 8) When the Nome finished the animals didn't say anything.
- 9) The Wolf didn't want the Li-Mon-Eags to make magic again.
- 10) The animals couldn't agree on what to do.
- 11) The animals made much noise discussing the Nome's plan.
- 12) The noise stopped when the animals saw a strange group on the clearing.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did Gugu tell the animals about the Li-Mon-Eags?
- 2) Did all the animals believe that the strangers were magicians?
- 3) Did the animals like the Li-Mon-Eags' plan to conquer the people of Oz?
- 4) Were there any animals who disapproved of fighting?
- 5) Did Gugu ask the animals to give him their answer quickly?
- 6) What stopped the noise?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) There were *hundreds and hundreds* of beasts.
- 2) Will you *listen to* him?
- 3) Think very *hard*.
- 4) Some of them wanted *to fight*.
- 5) Some of them even didn't want to talk about *fighting*.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

Next morning hundreds _____ beasts came _____ the big clearing. Their King spoke _____ a loud voice _____ his throne. He told the animals _____ the two strangers who were real magicians and came to help them, because their country was _____ danger. The people _____ Oz wanted to turn the animals _____ their slaves. One _____ the magicians wanted to speak _____ the animals _____ his plans. When one of the strangers came _____ front _____ the animals, they looked _____ him _____ great surprise. They had never seen an animal _____ a head _____ the lion, a body _____ the monkey and wings _____ the eagle.

3 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- 1) Hundreds of animals (to come) to the clearing.
- 2) The King (to get up) from his throne and (to speak) in a loud voice.
- 3) The animals (to listen) in silence.
- 4) The Nome (to tell) the animals about the Li-Mon-Eags' plan.
- 5) When the Nome (to finish) the animals (to begin) to talk to one another.
- 6) The beasts (to make) so much noise that they (can not) hear each other.
- 7) Suddenly the animals (to see) a strange group.

4 Finish up the sentences and write them down.

- 1) The animals came to the clearing because ...
- 2) Gugu addressed the animals 'brothers' because ...
- 3) Gugu explained that the Li-Mon-Eags came to the forest because ...
- 4) The Nome came out in front of the animals because ...
- 5) The beasts looked at the Nome in great surprise because ...
- 6) The Wolf was the first to cry out that the strangers were real magicians because ...
- 7) Gugu wanted the animals to think hard about the plan because ...

- 8) The animals began to shout loudly because ...
- 9) The noise suddenly stopped because ...

 **Discussing the Story**

1 Say why:

- 1) the animals came to the clearing.
- 2) the animals looked at the Li-Mon-Eags in surprise.
- 3) Gugu asked the Nome to speak to the animals.
- 4) Gugu the King asked the animals to think hard.
- 5) the animals made much noise.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Gugu the King called a meeting for a serious reason.
- 2) Gugu the King believed that the Li-Mon-Eags were magicians.
- 3) the Wolf was frightened by the Li-Mon-Eags' magic.
- 4) not all the animals agreed with the Li-Mon-Eags' plan.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) The animals looked at the Nome in great surprise.
- 2) The animals began to talk to one another.
- 3) Suddenly the noise stopped.

4 On behalf of one of the animals speak about:

- 1) why you came to the clearing.
- 2) who you saw on the clearing.
- 3) what you thought of the magicians' plan.

5 Make up and act out a talk between:

- 1) two animals who liked the magicians' plan.
- 2) two animals who disliked the magicians' plan.
- 3) one animal who liked the magicians' plan and one animal who didn't like it at all.

6 What is your opinion?

Gugu the King addressed the animals as "brothers". Why? What do you think of Gugu? What kind of ruler was he?

Chapter Nine

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) Dorothy arrived in the forest | a) on the Lion's back |
| | b) on foot |
| | c) with the help of the silver shoes |
| 2) The strangers | a) spoke in angry voices |
| | b) addressed the animals in a friendly way |
| | c) waited to be introduced |
| 3) Kiki turned the Wizard of Oz into | a) a fat woman |
| | b) a goose |
| | c) a fox |
| 4) Kiki turned the Nome into | a) a tree |
| | b) a goose |
| | c) a little lamb |
| 5) When Kiki flew into a very high tree | a) he cried |
| | b) he smiled |
| | c) he laughed |

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) There were three people and a lion among the group of strangers.
- 2) King Gugu looked at the girl in great surprise.
- 3) The Li-Mon-Eags were very afraid of the strangers.
- 4) The Nome knew who the strangers were.

- 5) Kiki was afraid of the Wizard.
- 6) Kiki wanted to get hold of the magician's bag.
- 7) The Wizard turned Kiki into a fox.
- 8) Kiki said the magic word four times.
- 9) The Lion wanted to kill the wicked magician.
- 10) The Nome was glad that Kiki used his magic.

black	little	strong	funny
true	wonderful	emerald	wicked
magic	real	poor	white
clever	high	fat	great
serious	ugly	yellow	quiet
silver	angry		

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did Gugu the King ask Dorothy about?
- 2) How did Dorothy introduce her friends?
- 3) Did the animals listen to Dorothy with interest?
- 4) Did the Wizard of Oz speak to the animals?
- 5) Did the Nome recognize the girl and her friends?
- 6) What did the Nome say to Kiki about the strange group?
- 7) What was the Nome afraid of?
- 8) Did Kiki speak to the strangers?
- 9) What did Kiki do?
- 10) Did the Wizard of Oz understand that there was a wicked magician among the animals in the forest?
- 11) What happened to Dorothy?
- 12) Who became a little boy?

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The animals _____ the forest stood _____ the little girl and her friends. They listened _____ her _____ great interest. They couldn't believe that she was not afraid _____ them. Dorothy didn't see the Li-Mon-Eags because they were standing _____ other animals. The Nome knew Dorothy _____ once. He was very frightened, but he hoped the strangers would not know him _____ his new animal form. Kiki looked _____ the Nome and thought: "Oh, that wicked Nome! How I hate him! The strangers will tell the animals _____ the forest all _____ us and the animals will kill us." Kiki thought hard. Then he ran _____ _____ the clearing _____ the forest and said the magic word several times.

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1) Dorothy was not afraid of the animals | because Kiki said his magic word. |
| 2) The Wizard had his magic tools with him | because she was with her friends. |
| 3) The Nome was terribly frightened | he knew the Wizard had his magic tools in it. |
| 4) Kiki looked at the black bag because | he couldn't see the wicked magician. |
| 5) The Wizard's body changed its form | because he wanted to do some magic tricks. |
| 6) The Lion was terribly angry because | he was very clever and could harm him. |
| 7) Kiki changed Gugu's form because | because he knew who the strangers were. |

 **Working with Vocabulary and Grammar**

1 Say what the italicised words mean.

- 1) Dorothy said that the Lion was her *true* friend.
- 2) The Wizard had his *magic tools* in a black bag.
- 3) The Nome *knew* them at once.
- 4) The Wizard was *a real* magician.
- 5) Now the Lion could not *harm* Kiki.
- 6) Dorothy became a little white *lamb*.

2 Which of the words in the box below can you use to describe:

- colour?
- quality?
- size?

1 Say why:

- 1) Dorothy and the Wizard came to the forest.
- 2) the animals listened to Dorothy's words with interest.
- 3) the Nome was frightened.
- 4) Kiki stood behind the Nome all the time.
- 5) Kiki wanted to have the Wizard's tools.
- 6) Kiki ran away.
- 7) the Wizard knew there was a wicked magician nearby.
- 8) Kiki laughed.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Dorothy was proud of her friends.
- 2) Dorothy was not afraid of the animals of the forest.
- 3) Kiki hated the Nome.
- 4) Kiki was afraid of the Wizard.
- 5) Kiki was afraid of Gugu.
- 6) Kiki was wicked.

3 Say who became:

- a fox
- a lamb
- a goose
- a boy
- a fat woman

4 On behalf of Gugu speak about:

- 1) the strange group that appeared on the clearing.
- 2) the impression Dorothy made on you.
- 3) the magic changes that you saw happen with the strangers.
- 4) what happened to you.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

Dorothy and Gugu the King.

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1) Kiki Aru | a) stayed on the clearing |
| | b) flew far away |
| | c) stayed near the clearing |
| 2) Kiki Aru | a) opened the magic bag |
| | b) lost the magic tools |
| | c) couldn't open the magic bag |
| 3) The Wizard thought it was | a) difficult to break the magic |
| | b) easy to break the magic |
| | c) impossible to break the magic |
| 4) The Nome | a) was not afraid of Kiki |
| | b) wanted Kiki to be his master |
| | c) was afraid of Kiki |
| 5) The magic word changed the Goose | a) into the Nome |
| | b) into the Munchkin Boy |
| | c) into the Li-Mon-Eag |

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) All the animals were terribly frightened.
- 2) Some of the animals didn't run away from the clearing.
- 3) They didn't know what to do.
- 4) There was a Fat Man and a Little Boy on the clearing too.
- 5) The Goose didn't know who it really was.
- 6) The Wizard didn't know where his bag was.
- 7) Dorothy thought it wasn't difficult to find the bag.
- 8) The Goose didn't want to look for the black bag.
- 9) The Goose wanted to find Kiki Aru.
- 10) Kiki had a new plan.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did all the animals of the forest do?
- 2) How did Dorothy learn that the Fox was her friend the Wizard?
- 3) Did the Munchkin Boy remember who he really was?
- 4) Did Kiki fly far away from the clearing?
- 5) Did Kiki know what to do with the magic tools?
- 6) Who wanted to get the magic tools back?
- 7) Who looked for the the black bag with magic tools?
- 8) Where did the Goose find Kiki Aru?
- 9) Did Kiki need the Nome's help?
- 10) What did Kiki change the Goose into?

 Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) *Let us* run away from this place.
- 2) Dorothy and her friends *stayed* on the clearing.
- 3) With *the tools* I can do magic.
- 4) Kiki *hung* the bag on the tree.
- 5) It is not difficult *to break the magic* with my magic tools.
- 6) They all *looked for* the black bag.
- 7) The Nome *tried* to find Kiki.

2 How many phrases can you make up with the words in the box below using the verbs *to do* or *to make*? Write them down.

magic magic tools harm friends magic tricks a copy a birthday present a cake

3 Complete the sentences, using *to do* or *to make*.

- 1) He doesn't know my secret, so he can _____ me no harm now.
- 2) He is very bad. He can _____ much harm.
- 3) You must not fly away from me. _____ your magic here.
- 4) A tree can't _____ any harm.
- 5) He took a piece of paper and _____ a copy of the writing.
- 6) Will you help me to _____ a birthday present for Ozma?
- 7) Dorothy wanted to _____ a great cake.
- 8) With the tools I can _____ magic which I can't _____ with one magic word.

4 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The animals _____ the clearing were very frightened. They thought the magician would change their form too and ran _____ from that place. Only the little Lamb, the Fox, the Boy, and the Fat Woman stayed _____ the clearing. They didn't speak, they only looked _____ one another. When they remembered what they were before, they looked _____ the Goose. The Goose, who was really the Nome, was afraid _____ the Wizard and his friends. So he decided to hide his real name _____ them. He said that he was just a goose. But when the friends and Gugu started to look _____ the Wizard's black bag, the Goose started looking _____ it too. He wanted to find the bag and hide it _____ the Wizard. "If the Wizard knows who I really am, he will kick me _____ _____ the Land of Oz!"

 Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

- 1) some animals stayed on the clearing.
- 2) the Goose didn't give his real name.
- 3) Kiki understood nothing about the magic tools.

- 4) the Wizard wanted to find his black bag.
- 5) the Goose wanted to find the black bag too.
- 6) the Nome wanted to find Kiki.
- 7) the Nome obeyed Kiki.
- 8) Kiki was ready to listen to the Nome's plan.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Goose didn't want to change into his real form.
- 2) Kiki was a lazy boy.
- 3) Kiki needed the Nome.
- 4) the Nome wanted to find Kiki very much.

3 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

- 1) how you found out what animals stayed on the clearing.
- 2) your plan to find the black bag.

4 Read and act out the talk between:

Kiki Aru and the Nome.

5 What is your opinion?

"Why did you do all this?" The Nome didn't know why Kiki changed his form. Do you know why?

Chapter Eleven

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The Wizard understood that the Li-Mon-Eags | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) were their friends b) were their enemies c) were the Munchkins |
|---|---|

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2) The Fox hid in 3) The Nome wanted to change monkeys into 4) Kiki became 5) The Wizard | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) a big hole in the ground b) a big hole in a wall c) a big hole in a tree a) Li-Mon-Eags b) swords c) soldiers a) a tree b) a nut c) a stone a) threw the nuts away b) put the nuts into his pocket c) ate the nuts |
|---|--|

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) The Fox saw the two Li-Mon-Eags by chance.
- 2) The Wizard-Fox understood the Li-Mon-Eags' secret.
- 3) The Wizard-Fox decided to watch the wicked magicians.
- 4) The hole in the tree was very deep.
- 5) The Wizard-Fox couldn't hear well what the Li-Mon-Eags spoke about.
- 6) The Nome wanted to frighten the Oz people with fifty soldiers.
- 7) Kiki changed all the monkeys into soldiers at once.
- 8) The Nome was angry with Kiki again.
- 9) The Wizard-Fox learned the magic word at once.
- 10) The Nome heard the magic word from Kiki.
- 11) The Wizard repeated the magic word correctly three times.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) What place did Kiki and the Nome choose for their secret talk?
- 2) Did the Wizard-Fox understand who the Li-Mon-Eags really were?
- 3) Where did the Wizard-Fox hide himself?
- 4) What was the Nome's new plan?

- 5) How did the Wizard-Fox learn the magic word?
- 6) Did the Wizard remember the magic word at once?
- 7) What happened when the Wizard said the magic word for the first time?
- 8) What happened when the Wizard said the magic word for the second time?
- 9) Did the Nome understand who the Fox really was?
- 10) What did the Nome want to do with the Fox?



Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) I understand it all now. It is all *clear* now.
- 2) I must *watch them* all the time.
- 3) There was a big *hole* in the tree.
- 4) In a moment a soldier with a big *sword* stood on the clearing.
- 5) The Wizard *put his head out of the hole*.
- 6) *The order* of the letters in the word was wrong.

2 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

The Wizard-Fox (to hide) in a big hole in the tree. The two Li-Mon-Eags (to sit) not far from him, so he (to hear) everything they (to talk) about. The Wizard (to understand) that the wicked magicians (to want) to conquer the people of Oz. He (to think) it (to be) a very wicked plan. The Wizard (to become) very angry. Suddenly he (to see) one Li-Mon-Eag (to get up) and (to come) nearer to the tree where he (to hide). The Li-Mon-Eag (to look) into the hole, but he couldn't (to see) anything because it (to be) very dark inside it. Then a wonderful thing (to happen): the Wizard (to hear) the magic word!

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

When Kiki ran back _____ the Nome _____ the sixth time the Wizard-Fox put his head _____ the hole. He was not

afraid _____ the wicked magician because he knew the magic word. When he said it aloud Kiki changed _____ a small nut _____ once. The Wizard cried _____ joy and jumped _____ the hole. _____ that moment the Nome rose _____ the ground and looked around. The Wizard-Fox looked _____ him and said: "This Li-Mon-Eag must change _____ a big nut: Pyzrqxgl!" But no magic happened because the order _____ the letters _____ the magic word was wrong.



Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

- 1) the Wizard-Fox got into the hole.
- 2) the Nome wanted to change the monkeys into soldiers.
- 3) Kiki ran up to the tree several times.
- 4) the Wizard-Fox listened to the magic word six times.
- 5) the Wizard-Fox jumped out of the hole.
- 6) the Nome's form didn't change for the first time.
- 7) the Wizard-Fox changed the Li-Mon-Eags into nuts.

2 Prove that:

- 1) Kiki still didn't trust the Nome.
- 2) the Nome was angry.
- 3) the hole was a good place to hide.
- 4) the Nome didn't know what happened to Kiki.

3 Add more details:

- 1) At last I can tell you who changed our forms.
- 2) The Nome saw the Fox, but he did not see Kiki.
- 3) The Nome repeated the word several times.

4 On behalf of the Wizard speak about:

- 1) the strange animals on the clearing.
- 2) what you thought of the Li-Mon-Eags.
- 3) how you learned the magic word.

- 4) what you changed the Li-Mon-Eags into.
- 5) what you decided to do next.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

Kiki and the Nome

6 What is your opinion?

The Wizard decided to change the wicked magicians into nuts. Why didn't he change them into something else? Was his idea a good one?

Chapter Twelve

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1) The Wizard changed his friends | a) all at once
b) one by one
c) first into nuts, then into their real form |
| 2) The soldiers | a) were running around the forest
b) couldn't move
c) were climbing the trees |
| 3) The monkeys | a) asked the Wizard hundreds of questions
b) shouted at the Wizard
c) thanked the Wizard very much |
| 4) The basket was big enough for | a) twelve real monkeys
b) twelve soldiers
c) twelve little monkeys |

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 5) Dorothy and her friends | a) stayed in the forest for some more days
b) decided to live in the forest
c) went away to the Emerald City |
|----------------------------|--|

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Dorothy was the first to see the Wizard in his real form.
- 2) The Wizard changed all his friends into their real form at once.
- 3) The Wizard told his friends of his adventures.
- 4) The Wizard had a good reason for changing the wicked magicians into nuts.
- 5) The six soldiers made much noise in the forest.
- 6) The Wizard changed the soldiers back into monkeys.
- 7) The Wizard made magic with the help of his magic tools.
- 8) The monkeys liked the Wizard very much.
- 9) All the monkeys got into a small basket.
- 10) The Wizard promised to bring the monkeys back to the forest soon.
- 11) Gugu knew he had some real friends in the Emerald City.
- 12) Dorothy carried the basket in her hands.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did the Wizard's friends want to know?
- 2) What was the first thing the Wizard did when he came back to his friends?
- 3) Did the Wizard show the two nuts to his friends?
- 4) Could the nuts talk?
- 5) Could the nuts do any harm to the animals ?
- 6) Were the monkeys interested in the six big soldiers?
- 7) How did the Wizard change the soldiers back into little monkeys?
- 8) What did the Wizard need the twelve monkeys for?
- 9) Did the monkeys want to come with the Wizard?
- 10) What did Gugu think of the Wizard and his friends?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) The Wizard told his friends of his *adventures*.
- 2) The big soldiers couldn't *make a step*.
- 3) The monkeys *made great noise*.
- 4) You are the *true friends* of animals.
- 5) The Wizard *promised* to bring the monkeys back.

2 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- 1) The Wizard (made / did) magic without his tools.
- 2) The Wizard (made / did) his friends very happy.
- 3) The two nuts couldn't (make / do) the friends any harm.
- 4) They monkeys (made / did) great noise in the forest.
- 5) The Wizard (made / did) twelve monkeys very small.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Wizard changed his friends _____ their real forms. Then he told his happy friends _____ his adventures and showed them the two nuts. Dorothy, Gugu and the Cowardly Lion stood _____ the Wizard and listened _____ his story _____ great surprise. They were not afraid _____ the wicked beasts any more because they were only nuts now. Then they all went _____ the forest where the six soldiers were. Hundreds and hundreds _____ monkeys sat _____ the trees making great noise and talking _____ one another. When the Wizard changed the soldiers _____ monkeys again, all the monkeys _____ the forest cried _____ joy and thanked the kind magician. They wanted to come _____ him _____ the Emerald City.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

- 1) the Wizard went back to his friends in the clearing.

- 2) the wicked beasts could do no harm any more.
- 3) the friends hurried into the forest.
- 4) the friends couldn't hear each other in the forest.
- 5) the Wizard couldn't use his magic tools.
- 6) the monkeys wanted to go to the Emerald City.
- 7) Gugu invited the Wizard to come to the forest back again.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Wizard was a true friend.
- 2) the nuts couldn't do harm any longer.
- 3) the soldiers were happy to become monkeys again.
- 4) Gugu liked the Wizard and his friends.

3 Add more details:

- 1) The Wizard told his happy friends of his adventures.
- 2) The monkeys looked at the soldiers.
- 3) The Wizard put a small basket on the ground.
- 4) "What will you say to this?"

4 On behalf of Gugu the Leopard speak about:

- 1) the Wizard's magic.
- 2) what you thought of the Wizard.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

- 1) Dorothy, the Fat Woman, the Munchkin Boy and the Wizard.
- 2) the Wizard and the monkeys.

6 What is your opinion?

"East or West, home is best."

The Wizard took twelve little monkeys away from the forest to the Emerald City. Will the monkeys like the Emerald City? Will they want to come back to the forest?

Chapter Thirteen

? *Checking Comprehension*

1 **Make the right choice:**

- 1) Ozma was
 - a) pleased to see all her guests
 - b) angry with some Oz people
 - c) displeased with all the animals
- 2) The Oz people
 - a) made fun on Ozma's birthday
 - b) worked hard on Ozma's birthday
 - c) drank water from fountains on Ozma's birthday
- 3) Dorothy
 - a) cut the cake
 - b) asked the Wizard to cut the cake
 - c) asked Ozma to cut the cake
- 4) Ozma
 - a) knew the real form of the nuts
 - b) wanted to know the real form of the nuts
 - c) didn't want to know the real form of the nuts
- 5) Dorothy wanted
 - a) to use the magic of the fountain
 - b) to drink some water from the fountain
 - c) to put the nuts into the fountain

2 **Say true, false, or I don't know.**

- 1) The Wizard began to teach the twelve monkeys at once.

- 2) The monkeys couldn't understand what the Wizard wanted them to do.
- 3) The Oz people loved Ozma's birthday.
- 4) There were a lot of fountains in Ozma's garden.
- 5) There was a special board next to each of the fountains.
- 6) Ozma invited many guests to her birthday.
- 7) Ozma's birthday cake was beautifully decorated.
- 8) The candles were made of sugar.
- 9) Ozma thanked her friends for the wonderful present.
- 10) Ozma wanted the Wizard to change the nuts into Li-Mon-Eags again.
- 11) Dorothy wanted to use the magic of the fountain.

3 **Answer the questions.**

- 1) What did the Wizard teach the monkeys?
- 2) How did the people of the Land of Oz decorate their houses for Ozma's birthday?
- 3) What writing was there on a board near one of the fountains?
- 4) Who came to Ozma's birthday?
- 5) Did Ozma like the birthday cake?
- 6) What happened when Ozma cut the cake?
- 7) Did Ozma know where the Wizard took the little monkeys from?
- 8) What did the Tin Woodman give Ozma as a present?
- 9) What did the Wizard, Ozma and Dorothy speak about in the garden?
- 10) Did they know the real form of the nuts?
- 11) How did Dorothy want to use the magic of the fountain?
- 12) Did Ozma like Dorothy's plan?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 **Say what the italicized words mean.**

- 1) There was *a writing* on a board near one of the fountains.
- 2) There were *lighted candles* on the cake.

- 3) In the centre of the cake there were *letters* which were made of sugar.
- 4) They sat down on an emerald bench *opposite* one of the fountains.
- 5) The Wizard will *make them thirsty*.

2 Fill in the missing prepositions.

_____ last Ozma's birthday came. It was a great holiday _____ the Land _____ Oz. The people sang, danced and played games _____ the streets and their gardens. Ozma gave a great dinner _____ her Emerald Palace. Ozma's friends, people and animals, came _____ her palace _____ all the countries _____ the Land _____ Oz. Ozma talked _____ all _____ them. Then four beautiful girls brought _____ a very big cake and put it _____ the middle _____ the table. There were flowers and candles _____ it. _____ the centre _____ the cake there were letters which were made _____ sugar. When Ozma saw the cake she cried _____ joy: "Oh, how beautiful!" Then suddenly some funny monkeys jumped _____ _____ the cake and cried "Many happy returns!" Ozma laughed very much. She thanked her friends _____ the beautiful and unusual present.

3 How many phrasal verbs can you make with the help of the prepositions in the box? Use three of them to speak about the events of this chapter.

- out
- up
- down
- for
- away

to go
to come
to sit
to run

4 Match two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) The Wizard taught the monkeys different tricks | she wanted to see all her friends. |
| 2) The monkeys learned the acrobatic tricks fast | because they enjoyed the party greatly. |
| 3) There was a writing on one of the fountains | he wanted to make Ozma laugh. |
| 4) Ozma gave a great dinner because | because they were very clever. |
| 5) Ozma and her friends laughed very much | because the fountain was not a usual one. |
| 6) The Wizard was against Ozma's plan because | the magicians could do more harm to the people of Oz. |



Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

- 1) Ozma's birthday was a great holiday.
- 2) Ozma gave a great dinner.
- 3) Dorothy asked Ozma to cut the cake herself.
- 4) the monkeys made everybody laugh.
- 5) people couldn't drink water from one of the fountains in Ozma's garden.
- 6) Ozma wanted the Wizard to change the nuts into their real form.
- 7) the Wizard was against Ozma's idea.
- 8) Ozma sent Dorothy for a cup.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the Land of Oz looked differently on Ozma's birthday.
- 2) Ozma loved guests.
- 3) Ozma loved birthday surprises.
- 4) Ozma was kind.
- 5) Ozma liked Dorothy's plan.

3 Add more details to this:

- 1) There was some writing on a board near one of the fountains.
- 2) Ozma took a knife and cut the cake.
- 3) Dorothy went out for a walk in Ozma's garden.
- 4) "We must not be afraid of two living things."
- 5) "That's not a bad idea," said the Wizard.

4 On behalf of Dorothy speak about:

- 1) the Land of Oz on Ozma's birthday.
- 2) your present to Ozma.
- 3) why you wanted to give Ozma an unusual present.
- 4) why you went for a walk the following morning.
- 5) what you talked with Ozma and the Wizard about.
- 6) your plan to use the magic of the fountain.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

- 1) Dorothy, Ozma and the little monkeys.
- 2) the Wizard, Dorothy and Ozma.

6 What is your opinion?

"We must not be afraid of two living things even if they are our enemies, or wicked magicians," said Ozma. Do you share her opinion? Speak with your classmates and find out what they think about it.

Chapter Fourteen

? Checking Comprehension

1 Make the right choice:

- 1) The Wizard put the small nut
a) near the fountain
b) into the fountain
c) into a cup next to the fountain

- 2) Kiki looked around
a) with fear
b) with anger
c) in great surprise

- 3) The water from the fountain changed the Nome into
a) his real form
b) a kind old man
c) a magician

- 4) Ozma wanted the Nome and Kiki
a) to go away
b) to stay in the Emerald City
c) to live in the Munchkin Country

- 5) Dorothy and the Wizard were happy to teach Kiki and the Nome
a) some acrobatic tricks
b) some magic
c) to be kind and to love people

2 Say true, false, or I don't know.

- 1) Dorothy put the little nut near the fountain.
- 2) The first nut changed into Kiki Aru.
- 3) Kiki understood where he was and got frightened.
- 4) Kiki was very thirsty.
- 5) The little boy drank three liters of water.
- 6) Kiki didn't remember anything about his life.
- 7) Kiki looked at Dorothy and began to cry.
- 8) Dorothy recognized the Nome King.
- 9) The Nome was happy to see Dorothy and her friends.
- 10) The magic water of the fountain changed the Nome into a kind man.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1) What did the Wizard say when he put the little nut near the fountain?
- 2) What was the real form of the first nut?
- 3) What did Kiki do for the first time in his life?
- 4) What did Ozma say about the little Munchkin Boy?
- 5) What did the Wizard say when he put the big nut near the fountain?

- 6) What happened when the Nome drank some water?
- 7) Did he remember Kiki?
- 8) Did Ozma want to send the Nome away from the Land of Oz?
- 9) Did the Nome and Kiki become good and kind?
- 10) Who helped them?

Working with Vocabulary and Grammar

1 Say what the italicized words mean.

- 1) Kiki *found* Ozma very beautiful.
- 2) The boy smiled a kind and happy *smile*.
- 3) I shall *fight* you and kick you out of the Land of Oz.
- 4) I don't know *either* him *or* you.

2 Open the brackets to make the sentences complete.

- 1) The boy (to take) the cup and (to run) to the fountain.
- 2) He (to drink) one cup after another.
- 3) He (to forget) his name and the name of the country he (to live) in.
- 4) The Nome (to stand) in front of the friends and his long white hair (to rise) in the air.
- 5) The friends (to teach) the Nome and Kiki how to be kind and good.

3 Fill in the missing prepositions.

The Wizard put the small nut _____ the ground _____ the fountain and said the magic word. _____ once the nut changed _____ Kiki Aru, the boy _____ the Munchkin Country. The boy looked around _____ great surprise, because he couldn't understand where he was. He was terribly thirsty. He took _____ a cup and ran _____ the fountain. He drank one cup _____ another. When he looked around again he saw some beautiful people sitting _____ a bench. He liked them and smiled _____ them. _____ the first time _____ his life Kiki smiled a kind and happy smile.

Discussing the Story

1 Say why:

- 1) the Wizard put the nuts near the fountain one by one.
- 2) Kiki didn't understand where he was.
- 3) the boy obeyed Dorothy.
- 4) Ozma and her friends looked at the Nome in great surprise.
- 5) the Nome couldn't finish his angry speech.
- 6) Ozma wanted to leave Kiki and the Nome in the Emerald City.

2 Prove that:

- 1) the magic of the fountain really worked.
- 2) neither Kiki nor the Nome could do harm any longer.
- 3) it wasn't easy for Ozma, Dorothy and the Wizard to teach Kiki and the Nome how to be good and kind.

3 Add more details:

- 1) Kiki was very glad when he saw a cup and a fountain.
- 2) Kiki smiled to them.
- 3) The Nome laughed his wicked laugh.
- 4) "I don't know either him or you."

4 On behalf of one of the characters speak about:

- 1) the magic changes you saw.
- 2) what you thought must be done with the boy and the Nome.

5 Read and act out the talk between:

- 1) Dorothy, Ozma and the Munchkin Boy.
- 2) the Wizard, Dorothy, Ozma and the Nome.

6 What is your opinion?

- 1) Ozma believed that if the Nome stayed in the Land of

Oz, and saw only good and kind people, he would become good and kind himself.

- 2) Do you share her opinion? Do you believe that a place can change a man?
- 3) Speak with your classmates and find out what they think about it.

Dear Friend!

You have finished reading the book. Congratulations! We hope, you have enjoyed it.

Now let's talk about it and its characters once again.

Questions and tasks for the final discussion:

- 1) Did you like reading the book?
- 2) What have you learnt about the Land of Oz?
- 3) The Land of Oz was a magic country, wasn't it? Do you remember who could make magic there? Can you name all the magicians, witches and wizards of the country? How did they make their magic?
- 4) Some of the magicians were wicked. What happened to all of them? Why do you think they met such an end?
- 5) What character did you like most of all? Explain why.
- 6) Was there any character that you disliked very much? Explain why you didn't like him / her.
- 7) Describe your favourite part of the book. Role-play it with some of your classmates.
- 8) Dorothy has found many friends in the Land of Oz. Were they true friends? Can you prove it? What does it mean to be a true friend? Have you got a true friend? Which of the characters of the book would you like to be your friend? Say why.
- 9) There were many beautiful places in the Land of Oz. Which of them would you like to visit? Say why. What beautiful things would you see there?
- 10) In this book the animals of the Gugu Forest behave like people. Have you read any other books where the animals behave like people? What books? Did you like them?
- 11) Ozma, Dorothy and the Wizard decided to teach two wicked characters to be good and kind. What exactly do you think they taught their pupils? What good things can you teach someone?
- 12) Say what you think about the end of the book? Can you think of a different end to the story? Write it down and then read it in class.

- 13) Try your hand at story writing. Can you imagine what happened with your favourite character in ten years time? Start your story like this:

"Dorothy was happy to be back to the Emerald City once again. She was looking forward to meeting her friends: the Scarecrow, the Tin Woodman, the Cowardly Lion, Ozma, the Wizard. She knew Kiki and the Nome would wait for her too. But what was it? Why were the people of Oz making so much noise? Dorothy turned back and saw..."

VOCABULARY

Принятые сокращения

a adjective прилагательное
adv adverb наречие
cj conjunction союз
int interjection междометие
n noun существительное

num numeral числительное
pl plural множественное число
pron pronoun местоимение
prep preposition предлог
v verb глагол

A

about [ə'baʊt] *prep* об, относительно; около, вокруг
acrobatic [ækroʊ'bætɪk] *a* акробатический
adventure [əd'ventʃə] *n* приключение
afraid [ə'freɪd] *a* испуганный
be afraid of бояться
again [ə'geɪn] *adv* опять, снова
ago [ə'ɡoʊ] *adv* тому назад
air [eə] *n* воздух
all [ɔ:l] *pron* весь, вся, все
alone [ə'ləʊn] *a* один, одинокий
along [ə'lɒŋ] *prep* вдоль, по; *adv* (часто with) вместе с
already [ɔ:l'reɪdɪ] *adv* уже
always ['ɔ:lw(e)ɪz] *adv* всегда
anger ['æŋɡə] *n* гнев
angrily ['æŋɡrɪli] *adv* сердито
angry ['æŋɡrɪ] *a* сердитый
be angry with smb. сердиться на кого-л.
animal ['ænɪm(ə)l] *n* животное
another [ə'nʌðə] *pron* другой, еще один
any ['eni] *pron* какой-нибудь, сколько-нибудь (в вопросительных предложениях)

anybody ['eni,bɒdi] *pron* кто-нибудь (в вопросительных предложениях)
arm [ɑ:m] *n* рука (от кисти до плеча)
around [ə'raʊnd] *adv* кругом, всюду; вблизи
as [æz, əz] *adv* как; так как, в то время как
as ... as такие же ... как, так же ... как
asleep [ə'sli:p] *a* спящий
be asleep спать
at [æt, ət] *prep* в, у, при, на
ate [et] *см.* eat
away [ə'weɪ] *adv* прочь
axe [æks] *n* топор

B

back [bæk] *n* спина; *adv* назад
get back вернуться
go back возвращаться
balloon [bə'lu:n] *n* воздушный шар
balloonist [bə'lu:nɪst] *n* воздухоплаватель
bark [bɑ:k] *v* лаять
basket ['bɑ:skɪt] *n* корзинка
bath [bɑ:θ] *n* ванна
take a bath принять ванну

be (was / were, been) [bi:] ([wɒz] / [wə:], [bi:n]) *v* быть; существовать; находиться
beak [bi:k] *n* клюв
bear [beə] *n* медведь
beard [biəd] *n* борода
beast [bi:st] *n* зверь; чудовище
beautiful ['bj:utiful] *a* красивый, прекрасный
because [bi'kɔ:z] *conj* потому что
become (became, become) [bi'kʌm] ([bi'keim], [bi'kʌm]) *v* стать, становиться; превратиться
before [bi'fɔ:] *prep* перед; до; прежде чем
begin (began, begun) [bi'gin] ([bi'gæn], [bi'gʌn]) *v* начинать(ся)
beginning [bi'giniŋ] *n* начало
behind [bi'haɪnd] *prep* сзади, позади
believe [bi'li:v] *v* верить, доверять
bell [bel] *n* звонок
beside [bi'saɪd] *prep* около, рядом
best [best] *a* (превосх. ст. от good) наилучший
bird [bɜ:d] *n* птица
birthday ['bɜ:θdeɪ] *n* день рождения
bite (bit, bitten) [baɪt] ([bit], [bitən]) *v* кусать(ся)
blow [bləʊ] *n* удар
board [bɔ:d] *n* доска
body ['bɒdi] *n* тело
bone [bəʊn] *n* кость
born [bɔ:n] *a* рожденный
be born родиться
both [bəʊθ] *pron* оба
brains [breɪnz] *n* мозги, ум
brave [breɪv] *a* храбрый
break (broke, broken) [breɪk] ([brəʊk], [brəʊkən]) *v* ломать(ся), разбивать(ся)
brick [brɪk] *n* кирпич
bright [braɪt] *a* яркий
brightly ['braɪtli] *adv* ярко

bring (brought) [brɪŋ] ([brɔ:t]) *v* приносить, приводить
bucket ['bʌkɪt] *n* ведро
burn (burnt) [bɜ:n] ([bɜ:nt]) *v* сгореть; сжигать
but [bʌt] *conj* но
by [baɪ] *prep* у, при, около, по, к; мимо; на

С

cake [keɪk] *n* торт, пирог
call [kɔ:l] *n* зов; *v* звать, позвать; кричать
can (could) [kæn] ([kʊd]) *v* мочь, смочь
candle ['kændl] *n* свеча
capital ['kæpɪtl] *n* столица
carry ['kæri] *v* нести, относить
cat [kæt] *n* кошка
catch (caught) [kætʃ] ([kɔ:t]) *v* ловить, поймать; схватить
change [tʃeɪndʒ] *v* менять(ся), изменять(ся)
chapter ['tʃæptə] *n* глава
chop [tʃɒp] *v* рубить
circus ['sɜ:kəs] *n* цирк
city ['sɪti] *n* большой город
clean [kli:n] *v* чистить, убирать; *a* чистый
clear [kliə] *a* ясный, светлый
clearing ['kliəriŋ] *n* поляна в лесу
clever ['klevə] *a* умный, способный
close [klaʊz] *v* закрывать
clothes [klaʊðz] *n* одежда, платье
cold [kəʊld] *n* холод; *a* холодный
come (came, come) [kʌm] ([keɪm], [kʌm]) *v* приходить
come along идти по, вдоль
come back возвращаться
come down спускаться
come in входить
come off сойти; спадать, свалиться

come up (to) подойти (к)
comrade ['kɒmri:d] *n* товарищ
conquer ['kɒŋkə] *v* завоевывать, побеждать
contents ['kɒntents] *n* содержание
continue [kən'tɪnju:] *v* продолжать(ся)
copy ['kɒpi] *n* копия
make a copy снять копию, переписать
corner ['kɔ:nə] *n* угол
cotton ['kɒtn] *n* вата
count [kaʊnt] *v* считать, подсчитывать
country ['kʌntri] *n* страна, государство
cow [kaʊ] *n* корова
coward ['kaʊəd] *n* трус
cowardly ['kaʊədli] *a* трусливый
crow [kraʊ] *n* ворона
cruel ['kruəl] *a* жестокий
cry [kraɪ] *v* кричать
cry out крикнуть, воскликнуть
give a cry вскрикнуть
cut (cut) [kʌt] ([kʌt]) *v* резать, отрезать
cut off отрезать
cut out вырезать
cyclone ['saɪkləʊn] *n* циклон, вихрь

D

dance [da:ns] *v* танцевать
danger ['deɪndʒə] *n* опасность
dark [da:k] *a* темный
dear [diə] *a* дорогой, милый
decide [di'saɪd] *v* решать, принимать решение
difficult ['dɪfɪkəlt] *a* трудный
dinner ['dɪnə] *n* обед
dirty ['dɜ:ti] *a* грязный
disappear [dɪsə'piə] *v* исчезать, пропадать
do (did, done) [du:] ([dɪd], [dʌn]) *v* делать, сделать

down [daʊn] *adv* вниз; внизу
dress [dres] *n* платье; *v* одеваться
drink (drank, drunk) [drɪŋk] ([dræŋk], [draŋk]) *v* пить
drop [drɒp] *v* ронять, бросать
during ['dʒuəriŋ] *prep* в течение

Е

each [i:tʃ] *pron* каждый
each other друг друга
eagle ['i:gl] *n* орел
earth [ə:θ] *n* земля
easily ['i:zɪli] *adv* легко
East [i:st] *n* восток
easy ['i:zi] *a* легкий
eat (ate, eaten) [i:t] ([et], ['i:tn]) *v* кушать, есть
eat up съесть
egg [eg] *n* яйцо
emerald ['em(ə)rəld] *n* изумруд
the Emerald City Изумрудный город
end [end] *n* конец; *v* кончатся
enemy ['enɪmi] *n* враг, неприятель
even ['i:vən] *adv* даже
ever ['evə] *adv* когда-либо
every ['evri] *pron* каждый
explain [ɪks'pleɪn] *v* объяснять
eye-glasses ['aɪglɑ:sɪz] *n* очки

F

fairy ['feəri] *n* волшебница, фея; *a* волшебный
fall (fell; fallen) [fɔ:l] ([fel], ['fɒlən]) *v* падать, упасть
fall asleep заснуть
fall over опрокидываться, свалиться
far [fɑ:] *adv* далеко
far away далеко
fat [fæt] *a* жирный, толстый
fear [fiə] *n* страх

fairyland [ˈfeəriplænd] *n* сказочная страна
few [fju:] *a* мало
a few несколько
fight (fought) [faɪt] ([fɔ:t]) *n* битва, драка; *v* драться, сражаться
fill [fil] *v* наполнять
find (found) [faɪnd] ([faʊnd]) *v* найти, находить
finish [ˈfɪnɪʃ] *v* кончать, заканчивать
fire [faɪə] *n* огонь
set fire to поджечь что-л.
first [fɜ:st] *a* первый; *adv* сперва, сначала
at first сначала
for the first time впервые
fish [fɪʃ] *n* рыба
floor [flɔ:] *n* пол
fly (flew, flown) [flaɪ] ([flu:], [flaʊn]) *v* летать
fly away улететь
fly down лететь вниз
fly up взлететь
follow [ˈfɒləʊ] *v* следовать за
food [fu:d] *n* пища
fool [fu:l] *n* дурак; *v* дурачить, обманывать
forest [ˈfɒrɪst] *n* лес
forget (forgot, forgotten) [fəˈget] ([fəˈgɒt], [fəˈgɒtən]) *v* забыть, забывать
form [fɔ:m] *n* форма, внешний вид
found [faʊnd] *см.* **find**
fountain [ˈfaʊntɪn] *n* фонтан
fox [fɒks] *n* лисица
free [fri:] *a* свободный
friendly [ˈfrendli] *a* дружеский
frighten [ˈfraɪtn] *v* пугать, испугать
be frightened испугаться
front [frʌnt] *a* передняя сторона чего-л.
in front of перед, впереди
fruit [fru:t] *n* плод(ы), фрукт(ы)

full (of) [ˈfʊl (əf)] *a* полный
funny [ˈfʌni] *a* забавный, смешной

G

game [geɪm] *n* игра
play games играть в игры
gas [gæs] *n* газ
gate [geɪt] *n* ворота
get (got) [get] ([gɒt]) *v* получить, достать; добраться, дойти; попасть; доставить; сделаться
get back вернуться
get down спуститься
get in (into) забраться, проникнуть
get to попадать, добираться
get up встать
giant [ˈdʒaɪənt] *n* великан, гигант
giraffe [dʒɪˈrɑ:f] *n* жираф
give (gave, given) [gɪv] ([geɪv], [ˈgɪvən]) *v* давать, дать
give a cry вскрикнуть
glad [glæd] *a* довольный, радостный
be glad радоваться
glass [glɑ:s] *n* стекло; *a* стеклянный
go (went; gone) [gəʊ] ([went], [gɒn]) *v* идти, ходить, уходить; ехать
go along идти вдоль
go away уходить
go back возвращаться
go into входить
go on продолжать
go out (of) выходить
go up подниматься
go up (to) подходить
gold [gəʊld] *n* золото; *a* золотой
good-bye [gʊdˈbaɪ] *int* до свидания
goose [gu:s] (*мн. ч.* **geese**) *n* гусь
got [gɒt] *см.* **get**
grass [grɑ:s] *n* трава
great [greɪt] *a* большой, великий
ground [graʊnd] *n* земля

group [gru:p] *n* группа
guest [gest] *n* гость

H

hang (hung) [hæŋ] ([hʌŋ]) *v* висеть
happen [ˈhæp(ə)n] *v* случаться, происходить
happily [ˈhæpɪli] *adv* счастливо
happy [ˈhæpi] *a* счастливый
hard [hɑ:d] *a* жесткий, трудный; *adv* усердно; много
think hard напрягать ум
work hard упорно работать
harm [hɑ:m] *n* вред, зло; *v* вредить
do harm причинять зло
hate [heit] *v* ненавидеть
hawk [hɔ:k] *n* ястреб
head [hed] *n* голова
hear (heard) [hiə] ([hɜ:d]) *v* слышать, услышать
heart [hɑ:t] *n* сердце
help [help] *n* помощь; *v* помогать
hide (hid, hidden) [haɪd] ([hɪd], [hɪdən]) *v* прятать, спрятаться
high [haɪ] *a* высокий
hold (held) [həʊld] ([held]) *v* держать
hold out протягивать
hole [həʊl] *n* дупло; отверстие; дырка
holiday [ˈhɒlɪdi] *n* праздник, день отдыха
home [həʊm] *n* дом
at home дома
hope [həʊp] *n* надежда; *v* надеяться
horse [hɔ:s] *n* лошадь
hot [hɒt] *a* жаркий
hour [ˈaʊə] *n* час
house [haʊs] *n* дом
how [haʊ] *adv* как
humbug [ˈhʌmbʌg] *n* обманщик, мошенник
hundred [ˈhʌndrɪd] *num, n* сто, сотня
hungry [ˈhʌŋɡri] *a* голодный
be hungry быть голодным

I

idea [aɪˈdɪə] *n* идея, понятие, представление
if [ɪf] *сj* если
in [ɪn] *prep* в; через
in a minute через минуту
indeed [ɪnˈdi:d] *adv* в самом деле, действительно
inn [ɪn] *n* гостиница
inside [ɪnˈsaɪd] *adv* внутренняя сторона, изнанка; внутри
interest [ˈɪntrɪst] *n* интерес
into [ˈɪntu, ˈɪntə] *prep* в; внутрь

J

jar [dʒɑ:] *n* кувшин
jewel [ˈdʒu:əl] *n* драгоценный камень
joy [dʒɔɪ] *n* радость
jump [dʒʌmp] *v* прыгать, прыгнуть
jump down спрыгнуть, соскочить
jump out выпрыгнуть
jump up подпрыгнуть
just [dʒʌst] *adv* как раз; просто; только что; только
just then как раз в это время

K

keep (kept) [ki:p] ([kept]) *v* держать(ся); сдерживать
keep away держать на расстоянии, отпугивать
keep watch сторожить, стоять на страже
key [ki:] *n* ключ
kick [kɪk] *v* лягнуть, ударить ногой
kick out вышвырнуть, выгнать
kill [kɪl] *v* убивать
kind [kaɪnd] *a* добрый, любезный
kind-hearted [ˈkaɪndˈhɑ:tɪd] *a* мягко-сердечный
king [kɪŋ] *n* король

kingdom ['kɪŋdəm] *n* королевство, царство
kitchen ['kɪtʃɪn] *n* кухня
knew [nju:] *см.* **know**
knife [naɪf] *n* нож
knock [nɒk] *v* стучать, постучать
know (knew, known) [nou] ([nju:], [nəʊ]) *v* знать, узна(ва)ть

L

lamb [læm] *n* ягненок
land [lænd] *n* земля, страна, держава
large [lɑ:dʒ] *a* большой
last [lɑ:st] *a* последний
at last наконец
laugh [lɑ:f] *n* смех; *v* смеяться
lay [leɪ] *см.* **lie**
learn (learnt) [lɜ:n] ([lɜ:nt]) *v* учить, выучить; узнать
leave (left) [li:v] ([left]) *v* оставлять, покидать
left [left] *a* левый
on the left; to the left налево
leopard ['lepəd] *n* леопард
let (let) [let] ([let]) *v* позволять, пустить
let us go! пойдём!
letter ['letə] *n* буква; письмо
lie (lay, lain) [laɪ] ([leɪ], [leɪn]) *v* лежать
lie down лечь
life [laɪf] *n* жизнь
lift [lɪft] *v* поднимать
light [laɪt] *a* легкий, светлый
like¹ [laɪk] *v* любить, нравиться
like² *a* похожий; *adv* подобно, как
lion [laɪən] *n* лев
listen (to) ['lɪsn (tu)] *v* слушать, прислушиваться (к)
little ['lɪtl] *a* маленький
a little немного
lock [lɒk] *v* запирать (на замок)

long [lɒŋ] *a* длинный; долгий; *adv* долго
all day long целый день
how long сколько времени, как долго
look [lʊk] *n* взгляд; *v* смотреть; выглядеть; казаться
look after присматривать, заботиться
look around оглядеться
look at смотреть на
look for искать
look like быть похожим
look out выглядывать
look up поднять глаза
lot [lɒt] *adv* много
a lot of много
loud [laʊd] *a* громкий
loudly ['laʊdli] *adv* громко
love [lʌv] *n* любовь; *v* любить
low [ləʊ] *a* низкий; тихий; негромкий
in a low voice тихо, тихим голосом

M

magic ['mædʒɪk] *n* волшебство, колдовство; чудеса; *a* волшебный, магический
magician [mæ'dʒɪʃn] *n* волшебник, чародей
make (made) [meɪk] ([meɪd]) *v* делать, сделать; заставлять
mask [mɑ:sk] *n* маска
mass [mæs] *n* масса, груда
master ['mɑ:stə] *n* хозяин, владелец, господин
may [meɪ] *v* мочь
meet (met) [mi:t] ([met]) *v* встречать(ся)
meeting ['mi:tɪŋ] *n* встреча
melt [melt] *v* таять, растоплять(ся), растворять(ся)

middle ['mɪdl] *n* середина
minute ['mɪnɪt] *n* минута
mistake [mɪs'teɪk] *n* ошибка
moment ['məʊmənt] *n* момент
in a moment в одно мгновение
money ['mʌni] *n* деньги
monkey ['mʌŋki] *n* обезьяна
mountain ['maʊntɪn] *n* гора
mouth [maʊθ] *n* рот
move [mu:v] *v* двигать(ся), передвигать(ся)
much [mʌtʃ] *adv* много; гораздо (*при сравнении*)
very much очень
munch [mʌntʃ] *v* жевать, пережевывать

N

near [nɪə] *adv, prep* около, близко
never ['nevə] *adv* никогда
new [nju:] *a* новый
next [nekst] *a* следующий, ближайший
nice [naɪs] *a* хороший, красивый, приятный, славный
noise [nɔɪz] *n* шум
North [nɔ:θ] *n* север
nose [nəʊz] *n* нос
nut [nʌt] *n* орех

O

obey [ə'beɪ] *v* слушаться, повиноваться
of [ɒv, əv] *prep* с, из, о, от, о(об)
off [ɒf] *prep* прочь, с, от
often ['ɒfn] *adv* часто
on [ɒn] *prep* на, в, о
once [wʌns] *adv* однажды, один раз
at once сразу же, немедленно
only ['əʊnli] *adv* только
opposite ['ɒpəzɪt] *adv* напротив
or [ɔ:] *conj* или

order ['ɔ:də] *n* порядок; приказ; *v* приказывать, распоряжаться
other ['ʌðə] *pron* другой
out (of) [aʊt] *prep* из
over ['əʊvə] *prep* через; над; выше; об

P

paint [peɪnt] *v* рисовать, нарисовать
pair [peə] *n* пара
palace ['pælɪs] *n* дворец
part [pɑ:t] *n* часть
pass [pɑ:s] *v* проходить
pass by проходить мимо
past [pɑ:st] *n* прошлое
paw [pɔ:] *n* лапа
people ['pi:pl] *n* люди, народ
pick [pɪk] *v* поднимать
pick up схватить
plan [plæn] *n* план
pocket ['rɒkɪt] *n* карман
poetry ['pəʊɪtri] *n* стихи, поэзия
politely [pə'laɪtli] *adv* вежливо
prairie ['preəri] *n* прерия, степь
present ['preznt] *n* подарок
promise ['prɒmɪs] *n* обещание; *v* обещать
pull [pul] *v* тащить, дергать
pull out выдергивать
punish ['rʌnɪʃ] *v* наказывать, отомстить
push [puʃ] *v* толкать
put (put) [put] ([put]) *v* положить, класть
put into вложить, положить вовнутрь
put on надеть
put out вытянуть
put over покрыть

Q

question ['kwɛstʃn] *n* вопрос

quick [kwɪk] *a* быстрый; *adv* быстро; живо

quickly ['kwɪkli] *adv* быстро

R

raise [reɪz] *v* поднять

read (read) [ri:d] ([red]) *v* читать

reader ['ri:də] *n* читатель

ready ['redi] *a* готовый

real [riəl] *a* настоящий, действительный

really ['ri:li] *adv* на самом деле; действительно

remember [rɪ'membə] *v* помнить, вспомнить

repeat [ri'pi:t] *v* повторять

rest [rest] *v* отдыхать

rich [ri:tʃ] *a* богатый

right [raɪt] *a* правый, правильный; *adv* право

all right хорошо, ладно

be right быть правым

rise (rose, risen) [raɪz] ([rouz], [ri:zn]) *v* подниматься

river ['rivə] *n* река

road [rəʊd] *n* дорога

roar [rɔ:] *n* рычание; *v* рычать

round [raʊnd] *a* круглый; *adv* кругом

rule [ru:l] *v* управлять

ruler ['ru:lə] *n* правитель

run (ran, run) [rʌn] ([ræn], [rʌn]) *v* бежать, бегать, прибежать

run about бегать вокруг

run against [ə'geɪnst] натолкнуться (ся) на что-л.

run away убежать

run off убежать

run out выбежать

run up (to) подбежать

run up and down бегать взад и вперед

S

save [seɪv] *v* спасать

say (said) [seɪ] ([sed]) *v* сказать

scarecrow ['skeəkrəʊ] *n* пугало, чучело

screen [skri:n] *n* ширма

secret ['si:kri:t] *n* тайна, секрет; *a* тайный

see (saw, seen) [si:] ([sɔ:], [si:n]) *v* видеть, увидеть; понимать

sell (sold) [sel] ([sould]) *v* продавать

send (sent) [send] ([sent]) *v* послать, посылать

send back отослать

shake (shook, shaken) [ʃeɪk] ([ʃuk], [ʃeɪk(ə)n]) *v* трясти, качать

shake hands обменяться рукопожатием

sheep [ʃi:p] *n* овца

shirt [ʃɜ:t] *n* рубашка

shoe [ʃu:] *n* башмак, туфля

shop [ʃɒp] *n* лавка, магазин

short [ʃɔ:t] *a* короткий

shoulder ['ʃouldə] *n* плечо

show [ʃəʊ] *v* показывать

side [saɪd] *n* сторона

at his side рядом с ним

on every side вокруг, повсюду

signal ['sɪgn(ə)l] *n* сигнал

silly ['sɪli] *a* глупый

silk [sɪlk] *n* шелк

silver ['sɪlvə] *n* серебро; *a* серебряный

sing (sang, sung) [sɪŋ] ([sæŋ], [sʌŋ]) *v* петь

sit (sat) [sɪt] ([sæt]) *v* сидеть

sit down садиться

sit up садиться, приподниматься (*из лежачего положения*)

sky [skaɪ] *n* небо

slave [sleɪv] *n* раб

sleep (slept) [sli:p] ([slept]) *v* спать

slowly ['sləʊli] *adv* медленно

small [smɔ:l] *a* маленький, тоненький

smile [smaɪl] *n* улыбка; *v* улыбаться

smith [smɪθ] *n* кузнец

so [səʊ] *adv, cj* так, итак, так что

so that так что

soldier ['souldʒə] *n* солдат, воин; *ch* совой

some [sʌm] *pron* несколько; некоторые; какой-то; некоторое количество

some day когда-нибудь

song [sɒŋ] *n* песня

soon [su:n] *adv* скоро

as soon as как только

sorry ['sɔ:ri] *a* огорченный

be sorry сожалеть; извиняться

sound [saʊnd] *n* звук

South [sauθ] *n* юг

speak (spoke, spoken) [spi:k] ([spouk], ['spouk(ə)n]) *v* говорить

stand (stood) [stænd] ([stud]) *v* стоять

stand up встать

star [stɑ:] *n* звезда

start (for) [stɑ:t (fɔ:)] *v* отправляться (в путь)

statue ['stætju:] *n* статуя

stay [steɪ] *v* оставаться

steal (stole, stolen) [sti:l] ([stou], [stoul(ə)n]) *v* красть, украсть

step [step] *n* шаг; ступенька

stick (out) [stɪk (aʊt)] *v* торчать

still¹ [stɪl] *adv* все-таки; все еще

still² *adv* тихо; неподвижно

lie still лежать без движения

stone [stəʊn] *n* камень

stood [stud] *см.* stand

stop [stɒp] *v* остановиться

story ['stɔ:ri] *n* рассказ, история

strange [streɪndʒ] *a* странный, необычный; незнакомый

stranger ['streɪndʒə] *n* незнакомец, чужой, посторонний

straw [strɔ:] *n* солома

strong [strɒŋ] *a* сильный

study ['stʌdi] *v* учить, изучать

stumble (over) [stʌmbl (əʊvə)] *v* споткнуться

suddenly ['sʌdnli] *adv* внезапно, вдруг, неожиданно

sugar ['ʃʊgə] *n* сахар

suit [sju:t] *n* костюм

sun [sʌn] *n* солнце

in the sun на солнце

sunshine ['sʌnʃaɪn] *n* солнечный свет

supper ['sʌpə] *n* ужин

have supper ужинать

surprise [sə'praɪz] *n* удивление; *v* удивлять

be surprised удивиться

in surprise с удивлением

sweets [swi:t] *n* конфеты, сладости

sword [sɔ:d] *n* шпага, сабля

T

take (took, taken) [teɪk] ([tuk], [teɪk(ə)n]) *v* брать, взять; проводить

take a walk погулять; совершить прогулку

take out вынимать

tall [tɔ:l] *a* высокий

taught [tɔ:t] *см.* teach

teach (taught) [ti:tʃ] ([tɔ:t]) *v* обучать

tear [tiə] *n* слеза

telescope ['telɪskəʊp] *n* подзорная труба, телескоп

tell (told) [tel] ([tould]) *v* говорить, рассказывать, сообщать

terrible ['terəbl] *a* внушающий страх, страшный, ужасный

terribly ['terɪbli] *adv* ужасно

thank [θæŋk] *v* благодарить

thank you спасибо, благодарю вас

thank you very much большое спасибо

that¹ [ðæt] *сj* что
that² [ðæt] *pron (pl those)* тот, та, то; который
thing [θɪŋ] *n* вещь, предмет
think (thought) [θɪŋk] ([θɔ:t]) *v* думать
think over обдумать
thirsty ['θɜ:sti] *a* испытывающий жажду
be thirsty хотеть пить
thousand ['θauz(ə)nd] *num* тысяча
thread [θred] *n* нитка
threw [θru:] *см.* **throw**
throne [θroun] *n* трон
the Throne Room тронный зал
through [θru:] *prep* через, сквозь
throw (threw, thrown) [θrou] ([θru:], [θroun]) *v* бросать, швырять
tie [taɪ] *v* связывать, привязывать
till [tɪl] *prep* пока не; до тех пор, пока
time [taɪm] *n* время; раз
tin [tɪn] *n* жесть, олово
tired ['taɪəd] *a* усталый, утомленный
be tired устать
together [tə'geðə] *adv* вместе
took [tuk] *см.* **take**
tool [tu:l] *n* инструмент, орудие
touch [tʌtʃ] *v* трогать, притрагиваться
towards [tə'wɔ:dz, tɔ:dz] *adv* по направлению
trick [trɪk] *n* фокус, трюк
true [tru:] *a* правильный, истинный, настоящий; верный, преданный
trust [trʌst] *v* доверять, верить
truth [tru:θ] *n* правда
try [traɪ] *v* испробовать; стараться, пытаться
try on примерять
turn [tɜ:n] *n* черед, очередь; *v* повернуть(ся); перевернуть

in turn по очереди
turn into превратить(ся) в
turn to обратиться

U

under ['ʌndə] *prep* под, ниже
understand (understood) [ʌndə'stænd] ([ʌndə'stʌd]) *v* понимать, понять
understood [ʌndə'stʌd] *см.*, **understand**
unhappy [ʌn'hæpi] *a* несчастливый, несчастный
unknown [ʌn'nəʊn] *a* неизвестный, незнакомый, чужой
unlock [ʌn'lɒk] *v* отпирать
up [ʌp] *v* вверх, наверху
up and down *prep* вверх и вниз, туда и сюда
use¹ [ju:z] *v* пользоваться, применять
use² [ju:s] *n* польза
usual ['ju:ʒuəl] *a* обыкновенный, обычный

V

visit ['vɪzɪt] *n* посещение; *v* посещать
vocabulary [və'kæbjʊləri] *n* словарь
voice [vɔɪs] *n* голос
in a big voice громким голосом
in a small voice тонким голосом

W

wait [weɪt] *v* ожидать
wait for ждать кого-л. или что-л.
walk [wɔ:k] *n* прогулка; *v* идти; идти пешком, гулять
walk up подойти
wall [wɔ:l] *n* стена
want [wɒnt] *v* хотеть; нуждаться в чем-л.
warm [wɔ:m] *a* теплый

wash [wɒʃ] *v* мыть
watch [wɒtʃ] *v* наблюдать
keep watch караулить
water ['wɔ:tə] *n* вода
way [weɪ] *n* дорога, путь; способ
a little way off поодаль
in the right way правильно
on the way на-пути, в пути
wear (wore, worn) [weə] ([wɔ:], [wɔ:n]) *v* быть одетым (во что-л.); носить (одежду и т. п.)
weather ['weðə] *n* погода
welcome ['welkəm] *n* прием, приветствие
you are welcome милости просим, добро пожаловать
well [wel] *adv* хорошо; итак, ну
be well быть здоровым
West [west] *n* запад
what [wɒt] *pron* что, какой
which [wɪtʃ] *pron* какой, который
whisper ['wɪspə] *n* шепот; *v* шептать, прошептать
why [waɪ] *adv, pron* почему; как
that's why вот почему
wicked ['wɪkɪd] *a* злой; нехороший
wife [waɪf] *n* жена
wind [waɪnd] *n* ветер
windy ['wɪndɪ] *a* ветреный; обдуваемый ветром
wing [wɪŋ] *n* крыло
wise [waɪz] *a* мудрый, умный
wish [wɪʃ] *n* желание; *v* желать, пожелать

witch [wɪtʃ] *n* ведьма, колдунья, волшебница (злая)
wizard ['wɪzəd] *n* колдун, чародей, волшебник
wolf [wʊlf] *n* волк
wonder ['wʌndə] *n* чудо; удивление, изумление
in wonder в удивлении
wonderful ['wʌndəfʊl] *a* удивительный, замечательный
woodman ['wʊdmən] *n* лесоруб, дровосек
the Tin Woodman Железный Дровосек
word [wɜ:d] *n* слово
work [wɜ:k] *n* работа; *v* работать
world [wɜ:ld] *n* мир, свет
write (wrote, written) [raɪt] ([raʊt], ['rɪt(ə)n]) *v* писать, написать
writing ['raɪtɪŋ] *n* надпись
wrong [rɒŋ] *a* неправильный, ошибочный
be wrong ошибаться, быть несправедливым к

Y

yard [jɑ:d] *n* двор
year [jɪə] *n* год
yellow ['jeləʊ] *a* желтый
yes [jes] *adv* да
yesterday ['jestəd(ə)ɪ] *adv* вчера
yet [jet] *adv* все-таки, все же
young [jʌŋ] *a* молодой

CONTENTS

PART ONE

Chapter One.	THE CYCLONE	4
Chapter Two.	DOROTHY MEETS A GOOD WITCH	6
Chapter Three.	DOROTHY WANTS TO GO BACK HOME	8
Chapter Four.	DOROTHY MEETS THE SCARECROW	10
Chapter Five.	DOROTHY MEETS THE WOODMAN AND THE LION	12
Chapter Six.	DOROTHY TALKS ABOUT OZ, THE WIZARD ...	14
Chapter Seven.	THE GREAT WIZARD OF OZ	17
Chapter Eight.	THE SCARECROW AND THE TIN WOODMAN TALK TO THE WIZARD	19
Chapter Nine.	“WHAT SHALL WE DO NOW?”	21
Chapter Ten.	DOROTHY AT THE WITCH’S PALACE	23
Chapter Eleven.	“A FRIEND IN NEED IS A FRIEND INDEED” ..	26
Chapter Twelve.	THE WIZARD’S STORY	28
Chapter Thirteen.	THE OLD HUMBUG	30
Chapter Fourteen.	THE WIZARD HELPS THE FOUR FRIENDS	32
Chapter Fifteen.	THE WIZARD WANTS TO HELP DOROTHY	35
Chapter Sixteen.	DOROTHY IS UNHAPPY	37
Chapter Seventeen.	OZMA HELPS DOROTHY	40

PART TWO

Chapter One.	BINI ARU AND HIS SON KIKI ARU	44
Chapter Two.	KIKI WANTS TO BE VERY WICKED	46
Chapter Three.	KIKI MEETS A STRANGE MAN	48
Chapter Four.	THE NOME’S PLANS	50
Chapter Five.	BIRTHDAY PRESENTS FOR OZMA	53
Chapter Six.	KIKI AND THE NOME IN THE BIG FOREST ...	56
Chapter Seven.	THE NOME TALKS TO THE LEOPARD, KING OF THE FOREST	57
Chapter Eight.	THE MEETING ON THE CLEARING	60
Chapter Nine.	DOROTHY AND THE WIZARD COME TO THE MEETING OF THE ANIMALS	62
Chapter Ten.	THE NOME TRIES TO FIND KIKI	64
Chapter Eleven.	THE WIZARD LEARNS KIKI’S SECRET	66
Chapter Twelve.	THE WIZARD CHANGES HIS FRIENDS’ FORMS AGAIN	68
Chapter Thirteen.	OZMA’S BIRTHDAY	71
Chapter Fourteen.	AGAIN KIKI AND THE NOME	74

ACTIVITIES

PART I	78
Chapter One	78
Chapter Two	82
Chapter Three	88
Chapter Four	93
Chapter Five	98
Chapter Six	104
Chapter Seven	109
Chapter Eight	115
Chapter Nine	121
Chapter Ten	126
Chapter Eleven	132
Chapter Twelve	137
Chapter Thirteen	142
Chapter Fourteen	147
Chapter Fifteen	152
Chapter Sixteen	158
Chapter Seventeen	163
PART TWO	168
Chapter One	168
Chapter Two	172
Chapter Three	175
Chapter Four	179
Chapter Five	183
Chapter Six	187
Chapter Seven	191
Chapter Eight	195
Chapter Nine	199
Chapter Ten	203
Chapter Eleven	206
Chapter Twelve	210
Chapter Thirteen	214
Chapter Fourteen	218
QUESTIONS AND TASKS FOR THE FINAL DISCUSSION	223
VOCABULARY	225

По вопросам оптовых закупок обращаться:
тел./факс: (495) 785-15-30, e-mail: trade@airis.ru
Адрес: Москва, пр. Мира, 104

Наш сайт: www.airis.ru

Вы можете приобрести наши книги с 11⁰⁰ до 17³⁰,
кроме субботы, воскресенья, в киоске по адресу:
пр. Мира, д. 104, 4 этаж, тел. (495) 785-15-30

Адрес редакции: 129626, Москва, а/я 66

Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс» приглашает к сотрудничеству
авторов образовательной и развивающей литературы.

По всем вопросам обращаться
по тел.: (495) 785-15-33, e-mail: editor@airis.ru

Учебное издание

Баум Лаймен Фрэнк

ЧУДЕСА СТРАНЫ ОЗ

Адаптация текста, словарь *Г. К. Магидсон-Степановой*
Упражнения *И. П. Твердохлебовой*

Ведущий редактор *В. А. Львов*
Художественный редактор *А. М. Драговой*
Иллюстрации *Т. Ю. Никитина*
Иллюстрации на обложку *А. М. Кузнецов*
Оформление обложки *А. М. Кузнецов*
Технический редактор *С. С. Коломеец*
Компьютерная верстка *Г. В. Доронина*
Корректоры *Т. Е. Львова, З. А. Тихонова*

Подписано в печать 20.05.08. Формат 60×90/16.
Печать офсетная. Гарнитура «Таймс». Печ. л. 15.
Усл.-печ. л. 15. Тираж 7000 экз. Заказ № 3734.

ООО «Издательство «АЙРИС-пресс»
113184, Москва, ул. Б. Полянка, д. 50, стр. 3.

ОАО «Тверской ордена Трудового Красного Знамени
полиграфкомбинат детской литературы им. 50-летия СССР».
170040, г. Тверь, пр. 50 лет Октября, 46.

